

A Taste of Astrology

A Sidereal Zodiacal Approach

Aakhut Em Bak

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. PLANETS, SIGNS, AND HOUSES

1.1 The classical planets	4
1.2 Sun's yearly cycle and the zodiac	6
1.3 The twelve signs	8
1.4 Sun's daily cycle and the angles	12
1.5 The twelve houses	14
1.6 The astrological chart	19

2. SOME NOTIONS

2.1 Ecliptic coordinates	22
2.2 Degree-based aspects	23
2.3 Exact and close aspects	26
2.4 Dispositors	28
2.5 Benefics, malefics, and sects	28
2.6 House strength	30
2.7 Some Hellenistic lots	31

3. SOME HORARY ASTROLOGY

3.1 Introduction	34
3.2 A 3rd-House query: A possible trip	35
3.3 A 6th-House query: My battle against diabetes	38
3.4 A 7th-House query: Racial relations in America	41
3.5 A 9th-House query: Improving my astrology skills	44
3.6 Someone else's query	46

4. SOME NATAL ASTROLOGY

4.1 Introduction	49
4.2 The natal chart	49
4.3 The Protected Ascendant	55
4.4 Solar returns	59
4.5 Guessing a birth time	65
4.6 Frankland's cusp-derived points	70

5. PRIMARY AND SECONDARY DIRECTIONS

5.1 Natal primary directions	76
5.2 Solar-return primary directions	80
5.3 Lunar-return primary directions	83
5.4 Birth-time rectification	86
5.5 Secondary progressions	89

TABLE OF CONTENTS

6. AN AMERICAN NATAL CHART

6.1 The Declaration of Independence	96
6.2 A USA natal chart	97
6.3 Some Protected Ascendants	102
6.4 Some secondary progressions	107

APPENDIX A: The method of primary directions

A1 Equatorial coordinates	116
A2 The primary-direction formula	117
A3 Directing toward a horizon angle	118
A4 Directing toward a meridian angle	121
A5 Time-keys	122

APPENDIX B: Calculating some primary directions

B1 King's natal Mars-PC4 conjunction	125
B2 King's natal Saturn-PC7 conjunction	128
B3 King's SR Sun-PC1 conjunction	129
B4 King's LR Mars-PC1 square	133

Bibliography	136
------------------------------------	-----

Index	137
-----------------------------	-----

1. PLANETS, SIGNS, AND HOUSES

1.1 The classical planets

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

From the point of view of an earthbound observer, the stars of the night sky appear to be fixed-in-place on a concentric spherical surface that is called the **celestial sphere**. The noun ‘planet’ (whose Greek name means ‘wanderer’) was used to describe any object that appeared to wander along the celestial sphere. To peoples of the ancient world, these wanderers were the two **luminaries** *Sun* and *Moon* and the planets *Mercury*, *Venus*, *Mars*, *Jupiter*, and *Saturn*, all of which are visible to the naked eye. These seven wanderers are called the **classical planets**. The adjective ‘classical’ here means ‘standard and traditional’.

Astrology is the study of the behavior of celestial bodies in the belief that they indicate the course of human affairs. The term ‘**traditional astrology**’ refers to the combination of the Hellenistic tradition of astrology (which is a blending of Mesopotamian and Egyptian astrological traditions with Greek philosophical thought) and the subsequent contributions of ancient Roman, Medieval (Indian, Islamic, and European), and European Renaissance astrologers.

In traditional astrology, the classical planets intrinsically represent the fundamental essences that collectively characterize all persons, places, and things. Therefore, each classical planet is the natural representative of some subset of persons, places, or things.

The radiant and solar-system ruling **Sun** intrinsically represents vitality, self-esteem, volition, and leadership. Sun’s intrinsic attributes make it the natural representative of:

Fathers; leaders and bosses among people; recognition among social interactions; things that give life and energy; gold among metals; lions among animals; eagles among birds; diamonds among gemstones; the heart among organs; things that are yellow in color.

Spiritually speaking, Sun is the energy associated with Man’s will – one’s ability to deliberately decide on a course of action, one’s freedom to choose between right and wrong. Sun is nobly expressed whenever one asserts oneself with dignity by using their will to rise above course and unsavory things.

The faithfully reflecting and phase-changing **Moon** intrinsically represents receptivity, adaptability, and devotion. Moon’s intrinsic attributes make it the natural representative of:

Mothers; nurturers; compliant people; domestic matters; that which is watery or associated with water; emotions; stages of change; short-term travel; wandering; lost items; nocturnal entities; new things or newborn creatures; silver among metals; the stomach and the intestines among organs; the digestive system; things that are white in color.

Spiritually speaking, Moon is the energy associated with Man’s trance ability, which enables one to learn and to change. In a trance state, one has a heightened receptivity in which beliefs, images,

and words become empowered to create or undo habits. Moon is nobly expressed whenever one is receptive to and compliant with right guidance.

The swift-moving planet **Mercury** intrinsically represents mobility of thought, word, and deed. Mercury's intrinsic attributes make it the natural representative of:

Clever action; deception; ideas and beliefs; speech and all modes of communication; expertise; negotiations, trade, and transactions; exact sciences and calculations; transportation; things that imitate humans; wind and everything that causes it; small items coming in large numbers; things of mixed composition; mercury among metals; the tongue and the vocal cords among organs; the nervous system; things that are multicolored.

Spiritually speaking, Mercury is the energy associated with Man's verbal mind – one's ability to think logically and to express oneself through words. Mercury is nobly expressed whenever one uses their cleverness and verbal facility to further that which is wholesome.

The planet **Venus** (whose Latin name means 'love') intrinsically represents affection, enjoyment, attractive power, and harmony. Venus's intrinsic attributes make it the natural representative of:

Friendly action; intimate (that is, closely personal) relationships; social activities; personal charm; charisma; that which is attractive or beautiful; that which is fragrant; that which is sweet or delicious; that which is pleasing to the touch; arts and entertainment; copper among metals; the kidneys and the thyroid gland among organs; the vagina and the uterus among female organs; fertility; things that are green in color.

Spiritually speaking, Venus is the energy associated with Man's visual mind – one's imagination, which enables one to form mental images. When intensely entertained with aroused feelings of enjoyment, mental images gain the power to attract the necessary resources for their realization. Venus is nobly expressed whenever through joyful optimism, one attracts the necessary resources for faring well.

The blood-red planet **Mars** intrinsically represents courage, enthusiasm, assertiveness, and pioneering. Mars's intrinsic attributes make it the natural representative of:

Aggressive action (that is, energetic assertive action or hostile action); athletic skill; bodily injury; that which is hot or burning like fire; things that are sharp or cutting; that which causes bleeding; iron among metals; the gallbladder and the adrenal glands among organs; the penis and the testicles among male organs; the muscular system; things that are red in color.

Spiritually speaking, Mars is the energy associated with Man's sense of justice. Being just with all people in all situations requires one to have a warrior's courage and zeal for righteousness, even at the cost of personal loss. Mars is nobly expressed whenever one has the courage to take right action.

The huge and gaseous planet **Jupiter** intrinsically represents virtuous optimism (that is, the belief that virtuous action eventually brings the best outcome) and expansion (material and spiritual). Because one's optimism draws positive circumstances to oneself, Jupiter is the bringer of good luck (that is, favorable circumstances that are beyond willful control). Jupiter's intrinsic attributes make it the natural representative of:

Noble-minded action; high social position; religion/spirituality; science and law among professions; tin among metals; money and luxury items among possessions; that which is large or spreading; sources of fertility and abundance; tin among metals; the liver and the pancreas among organs; adipose tissue (body fat); things that are purple in color.

Spiritually speaking, Jupiter is the energy associated with Man's moral sense – one's intuitive ability to distinguish right from wrong. Jupiter is nobly expressed whenever one acts with good character and good judgment.

The ringed and slow-moving planet **Saturn** intrinsically represents restriction, structure, and slow change. Saturn is the bringer of challenges that require patient perseverance in order for one to prevail. Saturn's intrinsic attributes make it the natural representative of:

Sober-minded action; restraints and limitations; rules and regulations; hierarchical organization; that which is hard and heavy; that which is lonely or isolated; chronic ailments; that which is old and decaying; death; that which is freezing and preserving; lead among metals; the spleen among organs; the skeletal system; the teeth; the skin, hair, and nails as body protection; things that are black in color.

Spiritually speaking, Saturn is the energy associated with Man's ability to patiently persevere (that is, to calmly remain constant to a purpose in spite of obstacles). Saturn is nobly expressed whenever one stabilizes one's heart (that is, one's prevailing mental and emotional attitude), so that one may think clearly and respond properly to situations in life, instead of reacting according to habit or impulse.

1.2 Sun's yearly cycle and the zodiac

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

The notion of a time period called 'a year' is tied to Earth's annual orbit about Sun. From the point of view of an earthbound observer, Earth remains at rest while Sun orbits it along the celestial sphere. As Sun makes its orbit, it moves along a great-circular path called the **ecliptic**. In our imagination, let's thicken this circular path into a circular belt that extends about 8 angular degrees on each side of the ecliptic. As seen from Earth, the classical planets all wander within this circular belt called the **zodiac**.

On the celestial sphere, a **constellation** is a grouping of fixed stars that is believed to resemble a person, animal, or inanimate object. As Sun makes its annual journey along the zodiac, it passes through portions of fourteen constellations. Going forward along the zodiac, the names of these constellations are **Aries** (whose Latin name means 'ram'), **Taurus** (whose Latin name means 'bull'), **Gemini** (whose Latin name means 'twins'), **Cancer** (whose Latin name means 'crab'), **Leo** (whose Latin name means 'lion'), **Virgo** (whose Latin name means 'virgin'), **Libra** (whose Latin name means 'scales'), **Scorpio** (whose Latin name means 'scorpion'), **Ophiuchus** (whose Greek name means 'serpent-bearer'), **Sagittarius** (whose Latin name means 'archer'), **Capricorn** (whose Latin name means 'horned goat'), **Aquarius** (whose Latin name means 'water-bearer'), **Pisces** (whose Latin name means 'fishes'), and **Cetus** (whose Latin name means 'sea monster' or 'whale').

Within the 360° of the zodiacal belt, the aforementioned fourteen constellations are generally unequal in angular expanse.¹ In this regard, TABLE 1.2a presents the time that Sun spends in each constellation during its annual journey. Note that while traveling through Pisces, the southern edge of Sun's disk overlaps with Cetus for about fourteen hours.

TABLE 1.2a: Sun's time spent in the constellations

Constellation	Time spent	Constellation	Time spent
Aries	25 days	Scorpio	7 days
Taurus	37 days	Ophiuchus	18 days
Gemini	31 days	Sagittarius	32 days
Cancer	20 days	Capricorn	28 days
Leo	37 days	Aquarius	24 days
Virgo	45 days	Pisces	38 days
Libra	23 days	Cetus	14 hours

At some time long ago, Mesopotamian astrologers conceived of dividing the zodiacal belt into twelve equal regions (called **signs**), each region having an angular expanse of 30° . They ignored the Cetus constellation and considered the Scorpio and Ophiuchus constellations in combination. This concept is called the **sidereal zodiac**. The names of the twelve sidereal signs are *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer*, *Leo*, *Virgo*, *Libra*, *Scorpio*, *Sagittarius*, *Capricorn*, *Aquarius*, and *Pisces*. Each sidereal sign is occupied predominantly by the constellation after which it is named.

TABLE 1.2b: Sun's annual location in the tropical zodiac

Sign	Time Period	Sign	Time Period
Aries	21 MAR – 20 APR	Libra	24 SEP – 23 OCT
Taurus	21 APR – 21 MAY	Scorpio	24 OCT – 22 NOV
Gemini	22 MAY – 21 JUN	Sagittarius	23 NOV – 21 DEC
Cancer	22 JUN – 23 JUL	Capricorn	22 DEC – 20 JAN
Leo	24 JUL – 23 AUG	Aquarius	21 JAN – 19 FEB
Virgo	24 AUG – 23 SEP	Pisces	20 FEB – 20 MAR

At some later time, astrologers conceived of dividing the zodiacal belt into twelve equal signs, each corresponding to approximately one month of Sun's annual journey along the zodiac. See TABLE 1.2b for pertinent details. This concept is called the **tropical zodiac**. The names of the

¹ The article *The Real Zodiac*, which is posted on the website <classroomastronomer.com/zodiac.htm>.

twelve tropical signs are *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer*, *Leo*, *Virgo*, *Libra*, *Scorpio*, *Sagittarius*, *Capricorn*, *Aquarius*, and *Pisces*. Although each tropical sign is the namesake of a sidereal sign, tropical sign *X* is generally not the same zodiacal region as sidereal sign *X*. Each tropical sign refers to a stage of Earth's annual cycle of seasons.

The celestial equator is the projection of Earth's equator onto the celestial sphere. The **equinoxes** are the two points where the ecliptic intersects the celestial equator. The tropical zodiac is a season-based sign arrangement that takes tropical Aries 0° to be the position of Sun at the March equinox. Sun spends about a month in each sign as it goes forward along the zodiac. Between the March equinox and the June solstice, Sun travels through the tropical signs of Aries, Taurus, and Gemini. Between the June solstice and the September equinox, Sun travels through the tropical signs of Cancer, Leo, and Virgo. Between the September equinox and the December solstice, Sun travels through the tropical signs of Libra, Scorpio, and Sagittarius. Between the December solstice and the March equinox, Sun travels through the tropical signs of Capricorn, Aquarius, and Pisces.

Like the axis of a spinning top, Earth's rotational axis undergoes a slow, cyclical change in which it traces a cone-shaped path over time. This wobbling motion of Earth's rotational axis is called *axial precession*. As a result of axial precession, the equinoxes slowly move westward along the ecliptic (that is, backward along the zodiac), thereby giving rise to the **precession of the equinoxes**. Consequently, we perceive each fixed star to move forward along the tropical zodiac at a varying rate, currently about 50.29" of arc per year (which amounts to about 01° every 72 years). In this regard, sidereal Aries 0° is usually not the same as tropical Aries 0° (the March equinox point). The angular difference between sidereal Aries 0° and tropical Aries 0° is called the **ayanāṃśa**. See Section 2.1 for pertinent details.

1.3 The twelve signs

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

In traditional astrology, each classical planet rules a number of zodiacal signs. Sun rules Leo. Moon rules Cancer. Mercury rules Virgo and Gemini. Venus rules Libra and Taurus. Mars rules Scorpio and Aries. Jupiter rules Sagittarius and Pisces. Saturn rules Capricorn and Aquarius.

One's personality is one's characteristic way of thinking, feeling, and behaving. Each sign is a personality expression of its ruling planet. Its **gender** refers to whether it is a masculine or feminine expression. **Masculine energy** is centrifugal, expansive, or externalizing. **Feminine energy** is centripetal, contractive, or internalizing. See TABLE 1.3a for pertinent details.

On examining TABLE 1.3a, we see that sign gender alternates between masculine and feminine as we sequentially go forward along the zodiac. The table also shows a pattern involving the sign rulers. Let's view Sun and Moon here as the respective masculine and feminine expressions of a planet called *Luminary*. As we go from Leo to Capricorn, the order of the sign rulers is: Luminary, Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn. As we go from Aquarius to Cancer, the order of the sign rulers is: Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Venus, Mercury, Luminary (which is the reversal of the previous order).

Fire, earth, air, and water symbolize the fundamental elements of human personality. **Fire** symbolizes the desires that burn within us. **Earth** symbolizes our physicality. **Air** symbolizes the thoughts that blow around in our mental sky. **Water** symbolizes our emotional and intuitive feelings. We may categorize the twelve signs into four sets of three (called **triplicities**) that each correspond to a particular element of personality. See TABLE 1.3b for pertinent details.

TABLE 1.3a: Sign genders

Sign	Ruler	Gender	Personality Qualities
Leo	Sun	masculine	Authoritative, self-assured, wants recognition.
Virgo	Mercury	feminine	Discriminating, methodical, meticulous, tidy.
Libra	Venus	masculine	Charming, has good taste, sociable, tactful.
Scorpio	Mars	feminine	Deep-diving, passionate, secretive, tenacious.
Sagittarius	Jupiter	masculine	Adventurous, frank, jolly, philosophical.
Capricorn	Saturn	feminine	Cautious, reserved, success-driven.
Aquarius	Saturn	masculine	Altruistic, innovative, reformist.
Pisces	Jupiter	feminine	Compassionate, introspective, mystical.
Aries	Mars	masculine	Ambitious, courageous, enterprising.
Taurus	Venus	feminine	Determined, reliable, sensual, slow to anger.
Gemini	Mercury	masculine	Clever, communicative, curious, versatile.
Cancer	Moon	feminine	Caring, intuitive, protective, sensitive.

TABLE 1.3b: Sign elements and modalities

	Cardinal	Fixed	Dual
Fire	Aries	Leo	Sagittarius
Earth	Capricorn	Taurus	Virgo
Air	Libra	Aquarius	Gemini
Water	Cancer	Scorpio	Pisces

In addition to categorizing the zodiacal signs according to personality elements, we may categorize them according to modes of operation. We may liken these modalities to stages within any season of the year. The **cardinal modality** is related to a season's beginning stage, and it refers to the tendency to initiate action and to create change. The **fixed modality** is related to a season's middle stage, and it refers to the tendency to be determined and to resist change. The **dual modality** is

related to a season's ending stage, and it refers to the tendency to be adaptable and to embrace change. The dual modality has attributes of both the cardinal and fixed modalities. We may categorize the twelve signs into three sets of four (called **quadruplicities**) that each correspond to a particular mode of operation. See TABLE 1.3b for pertinent details.

Note that the portrayal of each dual sign involves some type of twoness. Gemini is portrayed as two twins. Virgo is portrayed as a winged maiden. Sagittarius is portrayed as a centaur, which is half-man and half-horse. Pisces is portrayed as two fishes.

The sign **Aries** (whose Latin name means 'ram') expresses Mars in a masculine way. As a fire sign, Aries is desirous, energetic, and forthright. As a cardinal sign, Aries initiates action and creates change. Like a combative ram, Aries likes challenges and has an abundant amount of physical energy. Aries is courageous and pioneering – he is always ready to take risks. In his eagerness to get things done, he is inclined to act first and think later. Like a charging ram, he rushes headlong into situations without considering the consequences. At his best, masculine Aries has the courage to jump into action in order to enthusiastically pursue worthy goals.

The sign **Taurus** (whose Latin name means 'bull') expresses Venus in a feminine way. As an earth sign, Taurus is grounded and focused on material stability. As a fixed sign, Taurus is determined and resistant to change. She holds on to anyone and anything that she views as her own. Like a charging bull focused on his target, Taurus stays set on her course. She wants to see tangible results from her efforts, and so she is inclined to getting absorbed in acquiring material comforts and in indulging herself. At her best, feminine Taurus is doggedly determined to make tangible progress in achieving a better quality of life.

The sign **Gemini** (whose Latin name means 'twins') expresses Mercury in a masculine way. As an air sign, Gemini is intellectual, communicative, and social. As a dual sign, Gemini is adaptable and embraces change. The twins represent both multiplicity and communication. Gemini expresses multiplicity through his versatility – he is curious, is quick to learn, and can do many things competently. He enjoys communicating his thoughts and feelings with others. Gemini thrives in environments of continuous activity and change. At his best, masculine Gemini seeks to learn and communicate in order to further wholesome intellectual development.

The sign **Cancer** (whose Latin name means 'crab') expresses Moon, which is the feminine luminary. As a water sign, Cancer is emotional, intuitive, and empathetic. As a cardinal sign, Cancer initiates action and creates change. Cancer is caring and protective – she is motivated to create a secure environment for herself and her loved ones. Like a crab clinging to its shell, Cancer is strongly attached to her roots, and she clings to anyone and anything that she finds comfortable and familiar. She takes offense easily and holds on to negativity from past experiences. At her best, feminine Cancer safeguards those who are near and dear.

The sign **Leo** (whose Latin name means 'lion') expresses Sun, which is the masculine luminary. As a fire sign, Leo is desirous, energetic, and forthright. As a fixed sign, Leo is determined and resistant to change. Like the roaring kingly lion, Leo wants others to take notice of him and to somehow revolve around him. Leo likes things to be done his way, takes pride in his achievements,

and seeks due recognition. If he becomes conceited, domineering, or ostentatious, then he loses the goodwill and admiration that he enjoys. At his best, masculine Leo acts nobly and safeguards those for whom he is responsible.

The sign **Virgo** (whose Latin name means ‘virgin’) expresses Mercury in a feminine way. As an earth sign, Virgo is grounded and focused on material stability. As a dual sign, Virgo is adaptable and embraces change. Virgo has a keen eye for detail, which enables her to approach problems with logic and efficiency. Being analytical and pragmatic, she can adjust to changing circumstances while keeping a focus on detail and order. Like a virgin, Virgo sets a high standard for herself. If she sets her expectations too high, then she faces disappointment and a pessimistic outlook on life. At her best, feminine Virgo uses calculated thinking to determine how to make life run more smoothly for everyone.

The sign **Libra** (whose Latin name means ‘scales’) expresses Venus in a masculine way. As an air sign, Libra is intellectual, communicative, and social. As a cardinal sign, Libra initiates action and creates change. Like the justice scales, Libra seeks balance and harmony. He initiates relationships and partnerships with a diplomatic approach. He may have a difficult time making decisions as he weighs up all the pros and cons. He finds ugliness in people and things distasteful – he seeks to be surrounded by beauty and harmony. At his best, masculine Libra inclines toward justice and strives for fairness in all situations.

The sign **Scorpio** (whose Latin name means ‘scorpion’) expresses Mars in a feminine way. As a water sign, Scorpio is emotional, intuitive, and empathetic. As a fixed sign, Scorpio is determined and resistant to change. Like a scorpion’s claws, Scorpio is tenacious – she tightly holds on to people and things. She takes relationships seriously and is intensely loyal to her friends. Moreover, she carries her goals to fruition with unshakable resolve. Scorpio has a sharp insight that helps her to accurately size up people and things. If she feels threatened, then she is inclined to become angry and vengeful. At her best, feminine Scorpio is driven by a deep sense of purpose, and she is not easily deterred by obstacles or setbacks.

The sign **Sagittarius** (whose Latin name means ‘archer’) expresses Jupiter in a masculine way. As a fire sign, Sagittarius is desirous, energetic, and forthright. As a dual sign, Sagittarius is adaptable and embraces change. The ancients imagined Sagittarius as a centaur, which is a mythical half-horse and half-man creature. The half-horse represents the need to explore new things. The half-man is an archer who shoots his arrow into the air and then optimistically follows its trail. Sagittarius is adventurous and optimistic – he enjoys exploring new ideas, new experiences, and new philosophies. At his best, masculine Sagittarius is not afraid to go beyond his comfort zone and to take risks in order to achieve worthy goals.

The sign **Capricorn** (whose Latin name means ‘horned goat’) expresses Saturn in a feminine way. As an earth sign, Capricorn is grounded and focused on material stability. As a cardinal sign, Capricorn initiates action and creates change. Capricorn is ambitious and success-driven – she seeks social accomplishment through her goals and long-term plans. Like a mountain goat, Capricorn climbs cautiously to the summit of success, leaving behind those who are less resolute. If she gets absorbed in her pursuits, then she tends to become unconcerned about anyone and

anything perceived as inconsequential to her success. At her best, feminine Capricorn is diligent – she gives steady, meticulous attention to ongoing tasks.

The sign **Aquarius** (whose Latin name means ‘water-bearer’) expresses Saturn in a masculine way. As an air sign, Aquarius is intellectual, communicative, and social. As a fixed sign, Aquarius is fixed in his ideals and is often resistant to following conventional rules. The ancients imagined Aquarius as a person who is carrying life-giving waters and pouring them over the earth. Aquarius desires to make a positive impact on the world, and he thinks often about how to improve people’s lives. He works well in groups, but he may have difficulty being intimate one-on-one. At his best, masculine Aquarius is unselfish and makes improvements for the common good.

The sign **Pisces** (whose Latin name means ‘fishes’) expresses Jupiter in a feminine way. As a water sign, Pisces is emotional, intuitive, and empathetic. As a dual sign, Pisces is adaptable and embraces change. The ancients imagined Pisces as two fishes swimming in opposite directions, representing emotional versatility. Pisces is compassionate and intuitive – she can easily empathize with others, adapting to emotional shifts with ease. She is compassionate and tends to see the best in others. If others abuse her kindheartedness, then she may develop a victim mentality in which she perceives herself as being constantly wronged or powerless over her circumstances. At her best, feminine Pisces is resilient and shows kindly concern for others.

We say that two signs are **opposite signs** if each one is 6 neighbors away from the other. Aries and Libra are opposite signs. Taurus and Scorpio are opposite signs. Gemini and Sagittarius are opposite signs. Cancer and Capricorn are opposite signs. Leo and Aquarius are opposite signs. Virgo and Pisces are opposite signs.

1.4 Sun’s daily cycle and the angles

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

The notion of a time period called ‘a day’ is tied to Earth’s daily rotation about its line of poles. From the point of view of an earthbound observer, Earth remains at rest while the celestial sphere rotates about its line of poles (which are the same as Earth’s line of poles). Because the zodiacal belt is attached to the celestial sphere, it likewise rotates about the line of poles. During the course of a day, Sun does not move very much along the zodiac, and so we may take Sun to be attached to the zodiacal belt. As the zodiacal belt rotates about the line of poles, Sun rotates with it, and so Sun makes a daily journey across the sky during which one experiences daytime (when Sun is above the horizon) and nighttime (when Sun is below the horizon).

The **local horizon** is the local plane at which Earth’s surface and the sky appear to meet. If we parallel-transport this plane until it meets Earth’s center, then we get the **geocentric horizon**. In astrology, we are considering distant celestial bodies, and so the difference between the local and geocentric horizons is negligible. The intersection of the geocentric horizon with Earth is a great circle. The **horizon circle** is the projection of this great circle onto the celestial sphere. From here onward, we will take the noun ‘horizon’ to refer to the horizon circle.

Four important points of Sun's daily journey are the **sunrise point** (that is, Sun's location at sunrise), the **noon point** (that is, Sun's location at noon), the **sunset point** (that is, Sun's location at sunset), and the **midnight point** (that is, Sun's location at midnight). Here we take sunrise to be the instant when Sun meets the eastern part of the observer's horizon. Similarly, we take sunset to be the instant when Sun meets the western part of the observer's horizon. The sunset point is opposite the sunrise point. Here we take noon to be the instant when Sun meets the observer's **meridian** (that is, the projection of the local geographic longitudinal line onto the celestial sphere), thereby reaching its highest position above the horizon on that day and casting the shortest shadow. In this regard, we take midnight to be the instant when it is noon at the opposite end of Earth. The midnight point is opposite the noon point.

In astrology, the sunrise point is called the **Ascendant**, and the sunset point is called the **Descendant**. Each of these points is an intersection between the ecliptic and the horizon. In astrology, the noon point is called the **Midheaven** (or **Medium Coeli**, meaning 'middle of the sky'), and the midnight point is called the **Imum Coeli** (meaning 'bottom of the sky'). Each of these points is an intersection between the ecliptic and the meridian. The Ascendant, the Descendant, the Midheaven, and the Imum Coeli are collectively called the **angles**.

On page 109 of his book *Flash of the Spirit*, art historian and writer Robert Farris Thompson speaks about the Kongo cosmogram called the **yowa cross**.² This cross involves a horizontal line that intersects a vertical line. There is a small disk at each end of both lines. Thompson states that "the four disks at the points of the cross stand for the four moments of the sun", which are the four angles. Thompson states that "the horizontal line divides the mountain of the living world from its mirrored counterpart in the kingdom of the dead." Regarding the vertical line, Thompson states that:

"The summit of the pattern symbolizes not only noon but also maleness, north, and the peak of a person's strength on earth. Correspondingly, the bottom equals midnight, femaleness, south, the highest point of a person's otherworldly strength."

In traditional African cultures, one reaches the peak of one's otherworldly strength whenever one becomes an honorable ancestor.

Let's use knowledge from the *yowa* cross as a starting point for coming to an astrological interpretation of the four angles. The horizon is the dividing line between masculine and feminine areas of life. Masculine energy is centrifugal, expansive, or externalizing. Feminine energy is centripetal, contractive, or internalizing. The Ascendant (the sunrise point) represents one's entry into the physical world, which involves bodily life (that is, the incarnation of one's immortal soul into a mortal body). Here one leaves the feminine spirit world and enters the masculine physical world. The Descendant (the sunset point) represents one's exit from the physical world, which involves bodily death. Here one leaves the masculine physical world and enters the feminine spirit world. The Midheaven (the noon point) represents making it to the top in earthly life. Here one gains prestige (that is, high status that is achieved through success, influence, or other favorable attributes). The Imum Coeli (the midnight point) represents ancestral lineage, traditions, and remembrance. Those who live righteous and truthful lives in the physical world are on the way to becoming honorable ancestors, thereby making it to the top in the spirit world.

² Thompson, Robert Farris, Vintage Books (1984), ISBN-10: 0394723694, ISBN-13: 978-0394723693.

In traditional astrology, the local sky (above and below the horizon) is divided into twelve sectors called **houses**. Each astrological house refers to some subset of areas of human life. The 1st through 6th Houses lie below the horizon, and they refer to areas of one's life that are somewhat private. The 7th through 12th Houses lie above the horizon, and they refer to areas of one's life that are somewhat public.

The Ascendant-Descendant (or horizon) axis is the boundary between the upper sky (which contains the Midheaven) and the lower sky (which contains the Imum Coeli). The Medium-Imum Coeli (or meridian) axis is the boundary between the eastern sky (which contains the Ascendant) and the western sky (which contains the Descendant). A **quadrant-house system** uses the horizon and meridian axes to divide the local sky into four quadrants, each containing three houses. The varying angular sizes of these quadrants result in houses of unequal angular size. The **cusp** of a house is the dividing line that marks the beginning of that house. In a quadrant-house system, the Ascendant is the 1st-House cusp, the Descendant is the 7th-House cusp, the Midheaven is the 10th-House cusp, and the Imum Coeli is the 4th-House cusp. The locations of other house cusps depend on how the quadrant-house system is defined.

1.5 The twelve houses

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

Here we will explore the 12 astrological houses as they come to us from the Hellenistic tradition of astrology. This tradition uses the notion of **planetary joys**, which says that each classical planet has an affinity for a particular house where it functions naturally.

TABLES 1.5a and 1.5b present some meanings of the various houses. Note that the information in these tables usually refers to one's own self. For example, the 3rd-House item 'siblings' refers to one's own siblings, not someone else's siblings.

The **1st House** takes after the Ascendant (the sunrise point), which represents bodily life (and by extension, bodily health). In the Hellenistic tradition, the 1st House is called the 'helm', which is the part of a ship from which it is steered. The 1st House refers to self-identity, which is the set of characteristics by which a person or thing is recognizable or known. One's self-identity involves one's persona, which is the vehicle of personality (that is, characteristic way of thinking, feeling, and behaving) through which one navigates earthly life. The 1st House refers to one's physical body (and by extension, any physical vehicle in which one travels), which is the 'ship' that one steers through the physical world. The 1st House refers to one's well-being (that is, state of being happy, healthy, and prosperous). The 1st House is Mercury's joy. Mercury is versatile (that is, capable of doing many things competently), and so it rejoices in the diversity of human individuality.

In the Hellenistic tradition, the **2nd House** is called 'the place of livelihood', which refers to one's means of maintaining one's physical existence. The 2nd House refers to supportive persons or things, which are one's resources (that is, sources of aid or support that can be readily drawn from when needed). These resources are food (as sustenance), money, transportable possessions, and helpful people on whom one can rely.

TABLE 1.5a: The astrological houses

House	Areas of Life
1st	Bodily life or bodily health: Self-identity; the physical body and its health; the physical vehicle of travel and its condition; well-being; the querent (in horary astrology); the native (in natal astrology).
2nd	Supportive persons or things: Food, money, and portable property; helpful people on whom one can rely.
3rd	Early development: Early education; basic know-how; siblings; relatives; community; neighbors; short-distance travel.
4th	Roots and home: Ancestors; parents; upbringing; the house and other landed property; comfort and security; underground places; being gravebound.
5th	Children and personal interests: Offspring; fertility and pregnancy; recreational activities; overdoing pleasure; representatives of one's personal affairs.
6th	Sickness and servitude: Acute illness; stress; being subject to unwholesome influences; being of service to others; subordinates; employees; small animals.

In the Hellenistic tradition, the **3rd House** is called ‘the place of motherly God’. The 3rd House refers to early development. Man’s ability to learn and to change is based on trance, which is feminine (that is, internalizing) in nature. Trance is a state of heightened receptivity in which beliefs, images, and words become empowered to create or undo habits. Early education involves reading, writing, and arithmetic, and it aims at developing one’s basic knowledge and skills. Learning involves interacting with others. Interacting with relatives (that is, people to whom one is connected by heredity, adoption, or marriage) helps to build one’s sense of community (that is, a sense of “one for all and all for one”). Eventually one begins interacting with others, which involves travel within one’s neighborhood or to nearby regions. The 3rd House is Moon’s joy. Moon is the energy associated with Man’s trance ability.

The **4th House** takes after the Imum Coeli (the midnight point), which represents ancestral lineage, traditions, and remembrance. In the Hellenistic tradition, the 4th House is called ‘the underground place’, which refers to the Imum Coeli as Sun’s bottommost point below the horizon. The 4th House refers to roots and home. The roots of a plant are its underground section that serves as its support and through which it draws nutrients from the surrounding soil. One’s roots are one’s ancestral guardians in the ‘underground’ spirit realm. One’s immediate roots are one’s parents, who are responsible for one’s upbringing (that is, the care and training that one receives during a formative period). At best, one’s upbringing leads to one becoming an accepted member of a community. The house where one’s family lives is where the family ‘puts down roots’ (that is, makes its home), where one expects comfort and security. The 4th House refers to underground

places, such as wells, graves, and buried treasures. In this regard, the 4th House can refer to being gravebound (that is, headed for bodily death).

TABLE 1.5b: The astrological houses

House	Areas of Life
7th	Partnerships and oppositions: Romantic partners; marriage; contractual partners; transactional relationships; divine cooperation; someone else; opponents; bodily death or bodily harm.
8th	Death and another's resources: Bodily death; an ending that facilitates transformation; life-threatening situations; dealing with another's passing; inheritances; debts.
9th	Higher development: Religion/spirituality; magic; higher education; professional know-how; long-distance travel; foreign countries or foreign people.
10th	Making it to the top: One's calling or career; achieving something significant; gaining prestige; head persons; being on top of a situation; high places.
11th	Friends and benefactors: Friends; social activities; comrades and shared interests; help from others; fulfilling one's wishes.
12th	Unpleasant limitations: Trying situations; chronic illness; self-undoing; hidden enemies; hexing; confinement; large animals.

In the Hellenistic tradition, the **5th House** is called 'the place of good fortune' in relation to Man's physical body. The 5th House refers to children and personal interests (that is, activities that one pursues for enjoyment and satisfaction). Fertility and pregnancy are necessary for having children. Recreational activities (such as sex, entertainment, hobbies, sports, and theatres) restore one's spirits by enjoyment and relaxation, thereby helping one to feel childlike. Ambassadors and similar representatives are others who negotiate on behalf of one's personal interests. The 5th House is Venus's joy. Venus intrinsically represents affection, enjoyment, attractive power, and harmony, and it is the energy associated with Man's imagination.

In the Hellenistic tradition, the **6th House** is called 'the place of bad fortune' in relation to Man's physical body. The 6th House refers to sickness and servitude. Acute (that is, short-term and severe) illness is referred to here. Physical or mental stress often leads to illness. 'Unwholesome influences' not only refer to things that are detrimental to physical or mental health, but also to things that are morally harmful. On a negative note, the noun 'servitude' refers to the ill condition of being forced to serve another person. On a positive note, the noun phrase 'being of service' refers to voluntarily offering help to others. Subordinates are those of a lower rank, who are subject to the authority of a superior. Small animals (up to the size of a goat) are more easily domesticated,

thereby becoming subordinates in one's household. The 6th House is Mars's joy – the aggressive nature of Mars is on full display here.

We say that two houses are opposite houses if each one is 6 houses ahead (or equivalently 6 houses behind) the other. For example, the 1st and 7th Houses are opposite each other. Note that one meaning of the adjective 'opposite' is 'being the other of two complementary things'. In this regard, opposite houses are two halves of a whole.

The **7th House** takes after the Descendant (the sunset point), which represents bodily death (and by extension, bodily harm). In the Hellenistic tradition, the 7th House is called 'the setting place', which refers to the Descendant as the point where Sun sets. The Descendant's meaning of death is usually taken here in the figurative sense of dying to a life of 'me' in order to be reborn to a life of 'we'. The 7th House refers to partnerships, which are agreements in which parties cooperate to further mutual interests. Matters of love involve romantic partnerships. A spouse is one's partner in marriage. A contract is a formal agreement between parties entering into a partnership. In a transactional relationship, each party does things for the other, expecting to get something in return. Divine cooperation involves partnering with the divine realm (that is, the abode of Creator God, ministerial divine entities, and honorable ancestors). In *Ifá* (a traditional African spiritual system), there is the notion that the *egbé* (comrades of the spirit world) are the *bòròkinni òrun* (respectable persons of the spirit world) who will not let *bòròkinni ayé* (respectable persons of earth) fall into disgrace.

Because the 7th House is opposite the 1st House, it takes on some opposite meanings. While the 1st House refers to oneself, the 7th House refers to someone else. This 'someone else' is sometimes an opponent (that is, someone who acts contrarily to one's interests or welfare). The Descendant's meaning of death can sometimes be taken literally. While the 1st House refers to bodily life or bodily health, the 7th House refers to bodily death or bodily harm.

In the Hellenistic tradition, the **8th House** is called 'the inactive place', which we will take to refer to death as the permanent end of some type of activity. The 8th House refers to death. Whether taken literally or figuratively, death is an ending that facilitates transformation. Because the 8th House is opposite the 2nd House, it takes on some opposite meanings. While the 2nd House refers to one's own resources, the 8th House refers to someone else's resources, which may be an inheritance (which is something inherited as a result of another's bodily death) or one's own debts (which are what one owes another).

In the Hellenistic tradition, the **9th House** is called 'the place of fatherly God'. The 9th House refers to higher development. Religion/spirituality is a means to spiritual elevation. Magic is the use of incantations and suitable materials to invoke spiritual energies to influence events. Higher education aims at developing one's know-how with regard to some type of profession, at the end of which is some type of certification. Travel broadens the mind, and long-distance travel exposes one to foreign countries and foreign people. Religion/spirituality, higher education, and long-distance travel call one to expand the range of their knowledge, experience, and interest. The 9th House is Sun's joy. Sun is nobly expressed whenever one asserts oneself with dignity by using one's will to rise above course and unsavory things.

The **10th House** takes after the Midheaven (the noon point), which represents making it to the top in earthly life. In the Hellenistic tradition, the 10th House is called ‘the place at the top’, which refers to the Midheaven as Sun’s topmost point above the horizon. The 10th House refers to ‘making it to the top’ (that is, reaching a position of prominence). One’s vocation is an occupation (that is, something to which one devotes time and energy) that could be a calling (that is, a pursuit to which one is drawn) or a career (that is, a chosen pursuit). Through one’s vocation, one achieves something significant and gains prestige. A head person is at the top in that they are in charge of someone/something. Being on top of a situation means to be in full control of it. The 10th House can refer to high places, such as mountains, roofs, and a building’s upper floors.

In the Hellenistic tradition, the **11th House** is called ‘the place of good spirit’, which refers to goodwill (that is, an attitude of kindly interest). The 11th House refers to friends and benefactors. One’s friends take a kindly interest in one’s life and offer their help. Shared interests can bring people together as comrades. Goodwill from the divine realm leads to the fulfillment of wishes. The 11th House is Jupiter’s joy. Jupiter is the energy associated with Man’s moral sense, through which one has the noble-mindedness that is necessary to be morally upright, to judge rightly, and to exhibit loving-kindness.

In the Hellenistic tradition, the **12th House** is called ‘the place of bad spirit’. The 12th House refers to unpleasant limitations. One’s trying situations subject them to difficulties that test their character and resiliency. On page 96 of his book *Maat, the 11 Laws of God*, Ra Un Nefer Amen³ says: “... as long as you are anything less than the vehicle of God, you will go through experiences that will make you suffer as spurs to your spiritual realization.” Therefore, on the path of spiritual ascension, one will experience trials and tribulations.

Here is more on unpleasant limitations. Chronic (that is, long-term) illness works against good health. Self-undoing involves actions that have negative consequences for the person doing them. Hidden enemies are people and things that work against one’s well-being without one being aware of it. A hex is an incantation that is aimed at bringing bad luck to someone. Hospitals, prisons, and other places of confinement keep people or things within specific bounds and allow limited access. The 12th House is Saturn’s joy – the restrictive nature of Saturn is on full display here.

Because the 12th House is opposite the 6th House, it takes on an opposite meaning. While the 6th House refers to small animals (up to the size of a goat), the 12th House refers to large animals (beyond the size of a goat).

IMPORTANT COMMENTS: A house can take on a derived meaning that is based on its position relative to another house. For example, consider the 7th House, which refers to one’s spouse. We may view one’s 7th House as the spouse’s 1st House. It follows that one’s 8th House is the spouse’s 2nd House, thereby referring to the spouse’s resources. Moreover, one’s 9th House is the spouse’s 3rd House (the spouse’s siblings), one’s 10th House is the spouse’s 4th House (the spouse’s parents), and so on. In this regard, the spouse’s houses are called **derived houses**.

³ Ra Un Nefer Amen, Kamit Publications (2003), ISBN-10: 1930097751, ISBN-13: 978-1930097759.

1.6 The astrological chart

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

TABLE 1.6 presents the sign longitude of each classical planet, according to the sidereal zodiac, as observed at my time and place of birth. A planet's **sign longitude** is the zodiacal sign in which it appears, together with its **sign degree** (that is, its numerical degree within its hosting sign). The *ayanāṃśa* here is 23° 13' 14" according to True Chitrā 0° Libra.

TABLE 1.6: My natal astrological information

Aakhut Em Bak Tuesday, 08 March 1955 11:15 CST 17:15 UTC Chicago, IL latitude 41° 51' N longitude 87° 39' W Sidereal zodiac	Planet	Sign Longitude	Motion
	Sun	Aquarius 24° 08' 37"	direct
	Moon	Leo 24° 55' 32"	direct
	Mercury	Capricorn 26° 49' 06"	direct
	Venus	Capricorn 11° 15' 04"	direct
	Mars	Aries 13° 57' 47"	direct
	Jupiter	Gemini 26° 46' 03"	retrograde
	Saturn	Libra 27° 54' 33"	retrograde
The Ascendant (Asc) is at Gemini 06° 24' 11". The Midheaven (MC) is at Aquarius 11° 40' 06".			

FIGURE 1.6: My natal chart

	Ma 13:57 (PC12) 28:09	(PC11) 19:54	(PC10) 11:40 Su 24:08	Ve 11:15 (PC9) 19:54 Me 26:49
12th TA	11th AR	10th PI	9th AQ	8th CP
(PC1) 06:24 Ju 26:46 R (PC2) 28:09 1st GE	Aakhut Em Bak Natal Chart (Sidereal Whole-Sign Houses) Tuesday, 08 MAR 1955 at 11:15 CST Chicago, IL (41° 51' N; 87° 39' W)			(PC7) 06:24 (PC8) 28:09 7th SA
(PC3) 19:54 2nd CN	(PC4) 11:40 Mo 24:55 3rd LE	(PC5) 19:54 4th VI	Sa 27:54 R (PC6) 28:09 5th LI	6th SC

TABLE 1.6 also presents the motion of each planet as seen from Earth. A planet is said to be in **direct motion** if it appears to move forward along the zodiac. A planet is said to be in **retrograde**

motion if it appears to move backward along the zodiac. A planet is said to be **stationing** if it appears to be standing still, which occurs when it transitions between direct and retrograde motion.

There are many ways of dividing the local sky into 12 houses. The astrological chart of FIGURE 1.6 presents the information of TABLE 1.6 according to the **whole-sign house system**, in which each house is tied to a single sign. In this ecliptic-based system, the 1st House is tied to the **rising sign** (that is, the sign of the Ascendant), the 7th House is tied to the sign of the Descendant, but the 10th and 4th Houses are not always tied respectively to the signs of the Midheaven and the Imum Coeli.

In this book, we will be using the sidereal zodiac and the whole-sign house system as our foundation. Upon this foundation, we will be overlaying Porphyry houses as nuances. As a quadrant-house system, the **Porphyry house system** uses the horizon and meridian axes to divide the sky into four quadrants, each containing three houses. Moreover, the three Porphyry houses within a given quadrant are equal in angular expanse.

We will use the denotation 'PH n ' to mean 'Porphyry House n ' and the denotation 'PC n ' to refer to its cusp. Note that the angles are PC1 (the Ascendant), PC4 (the Imum Coeli), PC7 (the Descendant), and PC10 (the Midheaven). The even-numbered, nonangular house cusps (that is, PC2, PC6, PC8, and PC12) have the same sign degree. Moreover, the odd-numbered, nonangular house cusps (that is, PC3, PC5, PC9, and PC11) have the same sign degree.

As an example of the Porphyry overlay, consider Mercury in my natal Capricorn 8th House. PH9 (the Porphyry 9th House) extends from Capricorn 19° 54' up to Aquarius 11° 40'. Therefore, Mercury at Capricorn 26° 59' lies in the intersection of Capricorn 8th House and PH9. This means that Mercury refers to someone/something that is a blending of 8th-House and 9th-House qualities.

Regarding the astrological charts in this book, I have designed the rectangular-chart framework to mimic the circular-chart framework used by many astrologers. The houses appear in ascending numerical order as we go counterclockwise in the chart. More specifically, the 12th House always appears in the upper left-hand corner, the 2nd House always appears in the lower left-hand corner, the 6th House always appears in the lower right-hand corner, and the 8th House always appears in the upper right-hand corner. Note that as we go counterclockwise in the chart, we go forward along the zodiac.

An astrological chart is a visual representation that is related to Sun's daily and yearly movements. Firstly, the division of the local sky into 12 houses is related to Sun's daily journey above and below the horizon. In this regard, suppose that we (at a fixed location) were to compare various astrological charts, all for the same day, but for different times of day. As the hours go forward in time, we would see chart-wise that Sun changes its house location in descending numerical order. More specifically, Sun rises in the east at the Ascendant, culminates at the Midheaven, sets in the west at the Descendant, and anti-culminates at the Imum Coeli. Each planet, sign, and fixed star moves in the sky in a similar way. This apparent rising, culminating, setting, and anti-culminating of planets, signs, and fixed stars is associated with Earth's axial rotation, and it is called **primary motion**. From the point of view of an earthbound observer, primary motion is perceived as Earth

remaining at rest while the surrounding celestial sphere and everything on it (including the zodiacal belt) rotate about Earth's line of poles.

Secondly, the division of the zodiac into 12 signs is related to Sun's yearly journey along the celestial sphere. In this regard, suppose that we (at a fixed location) were to compare various astrological charts, all for the same time of day, but for different days. As the days go forward in time, we would see chart-wise that Sun moves forward through the signs, which implies that it changes its house location in ascending numerical order. Other planets in direct motion move in the same way. This apparent movement of the planets along the zodiac is associated with Earth's orbital motion about Sun, and it is called **secondary motion**.

2. SOME NOTIONS

2.1 Ecliptic coordinates

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

From the point of view of an earthbound observer, the ecliptic is Sun's annual path along the celestial sphere. This path is nearly a great circle. The plane of the ecliptic is inclined at a slowly varying angle (currently about $23^{\circ} 26' 09''$) relative to the celestial equatorial plane (which is the same as Earth's equatorial plane). The line of intersection between these planes passes through Earth's center, and it connects the March and September equinox points.

The **ecliptic coordinate system** enables us to specify the location of any point of the celestial sphere in terms of pertinent values of longitude and latitude. **Ecliptic longitude** is essentially angular distance measured along the ecliptic, going from 0° to 360° as we go eastward from Aries 0° . **Ecliptic latitude** is angular distance (along the celestial sphere) from the ecliptic, going from 0° to $+90^{\circ}$ as we go perpendicularly northward and going from 0° to -90° as we go perpendicularly southward.

TABLE 2.1: Sign and ecliptic longitudes

Sign Longitude	Ecliptic Longitude	Sign Longitude	Ecliptic Longitude
Aries 0°	0°	Libra 0°	180°
Taurus 0°	30°	Scorpio 0°	210°
Gemini 0°	60°	Sagittarius 0°	240°
Cancer 0°	90°	Capricorn 0°	270°
Leo 0°	120°	Aquarius 0°	300°
Virgo 0°	150°	Pisces 0°	330°

In the tropical zodiac, Aries 0° is the March equinox point. As a result of Earth's axial precession, the equinoxes slowly move westward along the ecliptic (that is, backward along the zodiac). Consequently, tropical Aries 0° is usually not the same as sidereal Aries 0° . The angular difference between sidereal Aries 0° and tropical Aries 0° is called the **ayanāṃśa**. Adding the *ayanāṃśa* to a sidereal ecliptic longitude yields its equivalent tropical ecliptic longitude. Note that Earth's axial precession does not affect ecliptic latitude, and so the tropical ecliptic latitude equals the sidereal ecliptic latitude.

We will be using the *ayanāṃśa* called 'True Chitrā 0° Libra', which is based on taking the fixed star *Chitrā* (Spica) to always be at sidereal Libra 0° . Consequently, sidereal Aries 0° is longitudinally opposite *Chitrā*.

TABLE 2.1 shows how ecliptic longitude is related to sign longitude. As an example, suppose that Moon has a sign longitude of Leo $24^{\circ} 55'$. From the table, we find that Leo 0° has an ecliptic longitude of 120° . It follows that Moon's ecliptic longitude here is $120^{\circ} + 24^{\circ} 55' = 144^{\circ} 55'$.

Sun's ecliptic latitude is 0° exactly. For each of the other planets, the ecliptic latitude varies along the zodiacal belt between some extreme negative (southern) value and some extreme positive (northern) value.

2.2 Degree-based aspects

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

An **aspect** between two astrological entities exists whenever the difference between their ecliptic longitudes is in the vicinity of some signature value carrying astrological meaning.

TABLE 2.2a: Aspects

Aspect	Separation	Type	Interaction
Conjunction	0°	major	soft or hard
Duodecile	30°	minor	hard
Sextile	60°	major	soft
Square	90°	major	hard
Trine	120°	major	soft
Quincunx	150°	minor	hard
Opposition	180°	major	hard

TABLE 2.2b: Strength of planetary aspects

Inexactness	Aspect Strength
from 05° to 07°	strong
from 03° to 05°	stronger
from 00° to 03°	strongest

TABLE 2.2a presents the signature separations for aspects that each involve an integer multiple of 30° . An aspect is said to be exact when it has its signature value. For an aspect between planets, we will follow astrologer Mychal A. Bryan by taking the margin of inexactness to be 07° in order for the aspect to be valid. See TABLE 2.2b for pertinent details.

Aspects show interactions between astrological entities. An aspect is either ‘soft’ or ‘hard’. A **soft aspect** indicates a harmonious relationship between the two entities in question. For a soft aspect, little or no effort must be made for the two entities to cooperate (that is, to work together for a common purpose). A **hard aspect** indicates an inharmonious relationship between the two entities in question. For a hard aspect, suitable effort must be made for the two entities to cooperate.

A **conjunction** is a major aspect that is formed whenever two entities are about 0° apart. It usually involves two entities that have almost the same degree in the same sign. A conjunction is a blending of the agendas of the two entities involved, and it is soft or hard according to the degree of compatibility between the two agendas.

A **duodecile** (or **semi-sextile**) is a minor aspect that is formed whenever two entities are about 30° apart. It usually involves two entities that have almost the same sign degree in signs that are next-door neighbors. The two signs of a duodecile have different genders, different elements, and different modalities. Element-wise, they involve duos of lesser compatible elements. Fire and air do not work so well with earth and water. The difference of gender, element, and modality, together with the lesser compatibility of elements, indicate that the two entities share no common ground (that is, shared beliefs or interests) thereby making this aspect hard. Nevertheless, this aspect involves next-door neighbors, and so the two entities can potentially build common ground by thinking creatively and making suitable adaptations.

A **sextile** is a major aspect that is formed whenever two entities are about 60° apart. It usually involves two entities that have almost the same sign degree in signs that are two neighbors away from each other. The two signs of a sextile have the same gender, but different elements and different modalities. Element-wise, they are either a fire-air duo or an earth-water duo. Fire and air support each other; earth and water support each other. The sameness of gender and the compatibility of elements indicate that the two entities share substantial common ground, thereby making this aspect soft.

A **square** is a major aspect that is formed whenever two entities are about 90° apart. It usually involves two entities that have almost the same sign degree in signs that are three neighbors away from each other. The two signs of a square have different genders and different elements, but the same modality. Element-wise, they involve duos of lesser compatible elements. The sameness of modality, together with the difference of gender and lesser compatibility of elements, indicate that the two entities share little common ground, thereby making this aspect hard. A square often indicates a call for one entity to bring its agenda into line with the agenda of the other entity.

A **trine** is a major aspect that is formed whenever two entities are about 120° apart. It usually involves two entities that have almost the same sign degree in signs that are four neighbors away from each other. The two signs of a trine have the same gender, the same element, but different modalities. The sameness of gender and element indicates that the two entities share substantial common ground, thereby making this aspect soft.

A **quincunx** is a minor aspect that is formed whenever two entities are about 150° apart. It usually involves two entities that have almost the same sign degree in signs that are five neighbors away

from each other. The two signs of a quincunx have different genders, different elements, and different modalities. Element-wise, they involve duos of lesser compatible elements. The difference of gender, element, and modality and the lesser compatibility of elements indicate that the two entities share no common ground, thereby making this aspect hard.

An **opposition** is a major aspect that is formed whenever two entities are about 180° apart. It usually involves two entities that have almost the same sign degree in signs that are six neighbors away from each other. The two signs of an opposition have the same gender, compatible elements, and the same modality. The adjective ‘opposite’ can mean ‘being the other of two complementary things’ or ‘being contrary to one’s interests or welfare’. In this regard, the two entities here are two halves that are somehow not acting as the whole that they are meant to be, and so an opposition indicates a call to harmonize these two competing interests.

In the Hellenistic tradition of astrology, we find the **principle of overcoming**:

Whenever two planets are configured according to a sextile, square, or trine, the planet lying earlier in zodiacal order dominates the aspect between the two planets.

The dominant planet is said to ‘overcome’ (that is, prevail over) the other planet.

FIGURE 2.2: My natal chart again

	Ma 13:57 (PC12) 28:09	(PC11) 19:54	(PC10) 11:40 Su 24:08	Ve 11:15 (PC9) 19:54 Me 26:49
12th TA	11th AR	10th PI	9th AQ	8th CP
(PC1) 06:24 Ju 26:46 R (PC2) 28:09	Aakhut Em Bak Natal Chart (Sidereal Whole-Sign Houses) Tuesday, 08 MAR 1955 at 11:15 CST Chicago, IL (41° 51' N; 87° 39' W)			(PC7) 06:24 (PC8) 28:09
1st GE				7th SA
(PC3) 19:54	(PC4) 11:40 Mo 24:55	(PC5) 19:54	Sa 27:54 R (PC6) 28:09	
2nd CN	3rd LE	4th VI	5th LI	6th SC

FIGURE 2.2 presents my natal chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The major planet-to-planet aspects in my natal chart are the Moon-Jupiter sextile, the Moon-Saturn sextile, the Mercury-Saturn square, the Venus-Mars square, the Sun-Jupiter trine, the Sun-Saturn trine, the Jupiter-Saturn trine, and the Moon-Sun opposition. The minor planet-to-planet aspects in my natal chart are the Moon-Mercury quincunx and the Mercury-Jupiter quincunx.

For learning purposes, let's see why Moon (at Leo $24^{\circ} 55'$) and Saturn (at Libra $27^{\circ} 54'$) form a sextile in my natal chart. Firstly, Moon and Saturn have almost the same sign degree in signs that are two neighbors away from each other. Secondly, the difference between their sign degrees is $27^{\circ} 54' - 24^{\circ} 55' = 02^{\circ} 59'$, which does not exceed 07° (our margin of inexactness). That's it!

Here is another way to see why there is a sextile here. Firstly, in terms of ecliptic longitudes, Moon is at $144^{\circ} 55'$ and Saturn is at $207^{\circ} 54'$. Secondly, the difference between their ecliptic longitudes is $207^{\circ} 54' - 144^{\circ} 55' = 62^{\circ} 59'$. Thirdly, the deviation of this difference from the sextile signature value is $62^{\circ} 59' - 60^{\circ} = 02^{\circ} 59'$, which does not exceed 07° (our margin of inexactness).

In my Moon-Saturn sextile, Moon lies earlier in zodiacal order because Leo comes before Libra. According to the principle of overcoming, Moon overcomes Saturn here. Therefore, Moon is the chief influence in the aspect.

In dealing with aspects, we will be using the notion of **aspect copies**. According to this notion, each planet projects a virtual copy of itself to each point that is at 30° , 60° , 90° , 120° , 150° , and 180° away. Each aspect copy at 30° away has duodecile qualities, each aspect copy at 60° away has sextile qualities, each aspect copy at 90° away has square qualities, and so on.

For learning purposes, let's consider the sextile relationship between Moon (at Leo $24^{\circ} 55'$) and Saturn (at Libra $27^{\circ} 54'$) in my natal chart. Moon projects a sextile copy to the point Libra $24^{\circ} 55'$, and so Saturn experiences the sextile as a conjunction in Libra between Moon's sextile copy and itself. Moreover, Saturn projects a sextile copy to Leo $27^{\circ} 54'$, and so Moon experiences the sextile as a conjunction in Leo between itself and Saturn's sextile copy.

An angle (that is, the Ascendant, the Descendant, the Midheaven, or the Imum Coeli) does not project aspect copies. Therefore, whenever there is an aspect between a planet and an angle, the planet is making the aspect to the angle. For such an aspect, we will take the margin of inexactness to be 07° in order for the aspect to be valid.

We may extend the notion of aspects to signs and houses. As an example of a sign-based aspect, two signs have a trine relationship if each one is four neighbors away from the other. As an example of a house-based aspect, two houses have a square relationship if each one is three neighbors away from the other.

2.3 Exact and close aspects

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

Regarding angular separation, an aspect is either exact or close. Practically speaking, an **exact aspect** occurs when the two entities in question share the same degree, minute, and second of arc in their respective signs according to the aspect's definition. A **close aspect** occurs when the two entities in question deviate from the aspect's signature angular separation within the margin of inexactness.

A close aspect is said to be **applying** if the pertinent angular separation is decreasing toward the signature value. The model applying aspect involves a direct-motion planet that has a lower sign degree than a slower entity. In this case, the planet's aspect copy is moving toward the slower entity. Here we say that the faster planet is applying to an aspect with the slower entity. An applying aspect becomes more potent as it approaches exactness.

A close aspect is said to be **separating** if the pertinent angular separation is increasing from the signature value. The model separating aspect involves a direct-motion planet that has a higher sign degree than a slower entity. In this case, the planet's aspect copy is moving away from the slower planet. Here we say that the faster planet is separating from an aspect with the slower entity. A separating aspect becomes less potent as the aspect leaves exactness.

If the faster planet is applying to or separating from a slower entity that is ahead of it in the zodiac, then the aspect is said to be **sinister**. If the faster planet is applying to or separating from a slower entity that is behind it in the zodiac, then the aspect is said to be **dexter**.

TABLE 2.3: Average longitudinal angular speeds

Planet	Angular Speed
Saturn	00° 02' 01" per day
Jupiter	00° 04' 59" per day
Mars	00° 31' 27" per day
Sun	00° 59' 08" per day
Venus	01° 12' 00" per day
Mercury	01° 23' 00" per day
Moon	13° 10' 35" per day

TABLE 2.3 presents the average longitudinal angular speed of each classical planet as it moves along the celestial sphere. Arranged from slowest to fastest, these planets are: Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Sun, Venus, Mercury, and Moon. This speed hierarchy is called the **Chaldean order** of planets, and it may be used to determine whether an aspect is applying or separating.

In the *Tajika* tradition of astrology (which is a blending of Indian and Perso-Arabic astrological traditions), applying and separating aspects are two types of planetary yogas. The Sanskrit noun **yoga** means 'joining'. An applying aspect is called an *ithasala yoga*, while a separating aspect is called an *isharafa yoga*. The Sanskrit word *ithasala* comes from the Arabic noun *ittiṣāl*, which means 'making contact'. The Sanskrit word *isharafa* comes from the Arabic noun *inṣirāf*, which means 'turning away'.

Yogas are not limited to the joining of two planets. Let's consider two yogas that each involve the joining of three planets. A **nakta yoga** is formed whenever a faster third planet is in a major aspect with each of two slower planets having no major aspect between them. The Sanskrit word *nakta*

comes from the Arabic noun phrase *naql an-nūr*, which means ‘translation of light’. A **yamaya yoga** is formed whenever a slower third planet is in a major aspect with each of two faster planets having no major aspect between them. The Sanskrit word *yamaya* comes from the Arabic noun phrase *jamʿ an-nūr*, which means ‘collection of light’. In each of these yogas, the third planet serves as a link between the two planets having no major aspect between them. Each of these three-planet yogas indicates an event that is facilitated by a third party.

2.4 Dispositors

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

If Planet *A* is in a sign that is ruled by Planet *B*, then Planet *B* is said to be the **dispositor** of Planet *A*. Another way to express this situation is to say that Planet *B* disposes Planet *A*. In this context, the verb ‘dispose’ means ‘to determine the outcome of’. For example, if Venus is in Mercury-ruled Gemini, then Mercury is the dispositor of Venus. In other words, Mercury disposes Venus.

In his blog post *The Essential Role of Dispositors in Horary* (13 March 2021), astrologer Anthony Louis states that:

The theory behind dispositorship is anthropomorphic and straightforward. If I am a planet visiting your home, then I am dependent on you for the resources at my disposal to accomplish my aims.

If Planet *B* disposes Planet *A*, then this situation indicates that Planet *A* is subject to Planet *B*.

2.5 Benefics, malefics, and sects

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

The words ‘benefic’ and ‘malefic’ are both adjectives and nouns. A planet is said to be **benefic** (that is, causing good) if it is beneficial (that is, producing or furthering favorable circumstances or favorable outcomes). A planet is said to be **malefic** if it is maleficial (that is, producing or furthering unfavorable circumstances or unfavorable outcomes). Benefics bring benefits, pleasure, and ease. Malefics bring challenges, discomfort, and struggle.

In his book *Hellenistic Astrology: The Study of Fate and Fortune*, Chris Brennan states the following with regard to the benefic/malefic distinction:

The observation that in the night sky, Venus and Jupiter appear as bright white stars, while Mars appears dark and red, and Saturn dark and brown, was probably at the core of this distinction originally. Thus it sets up an observable contrast between two groups of planets, with one set appearing brighter and the other set appearing darker. This then elicits a light/dark analogy, which is then extended into the realm of other contrasts or polarities between light and dark, such as good and bad, positive and negative, virtue and vice, constructive and destructive, and so on.

Venus and Jupiter are considered to be natural benefics, while Mars and Saturn are considered to be natural malefics. We will take Sun and Moon to be naturally neutral with regard to the benefic/malefic distinction.

Moon is considered to be functionally benefic during its waxing period and functionally malefic during its waning period. A new Moon occurs whenever Sun and Moon are in conjunction, while a full Moon occurs whenever Sun and Moon are in opposition. Moon waxes as it moves from newness to fullness. Moon wanes as it moves from fullness to newness.

Mercury is considered to be functionally benefic if it is closely associated with a benefic: [1] by being disposed by the benefic, [2] by close proximity in the same sign, or [3] via a major aspect. Similarly, Mercury is considered to be functionally malefic if it is closely associated with a malefic.

In the Hellenistic tradition of astrology, the classical planets are divided into two **sects** (or teams), each consisting of a luminary, a natural benefic, and a natural malefic. The **diurnal sect** (or day team) consists of Sun, Jupiter, and Saturn. The **nocturnal sect** (or night team) consists of Moon, Venus, and Mars.

Mercury's sect association depends on how it has risen relative to Sun. Whenever Mercury has risen before Sun (that is, becoming visible before daylight appears), then Mercury is considered to be diurnal. In that case, Mercury lies zodiacally behind Sun. Whenever Mercury has risen after Sun (that is, becoming visible after daylight appears), then Mercury is considered to be nocturnal. In that case, Mercury lies zodiacally ahead of Sun. Note that with respect to Sun, Mercury is always located in either the same sign or an adjacent sign.

An astrological chart is said to be a **diurnal chart** (or day chart) if Sun lies above the horizon (that is, the Ascendant-Descendant axis). An astrological chart is said to be a **nocturnal chart** (or night chart) if Sun lies below the horizon. A diurnal planet is 'happy' whenever it is in a diurnal chart, and it is 'unhappy' whenever it is in a nocturnal chart. Moreover, a nocturnal planet is 'happy' whenever it is in a nocturnal chart, and it is 'unhappy' whenever it is in a diurnal chart.

A planet is 'happy' whenever it is in a chart that matches its sect. A happy benefic is very beneficial, while a happy malefic brings difficulties that require moderate effort to overcome. A planet is 'unhappy' whenever it is in a chart that does not match its sect. An unhappy benefic is moderately beneficial, while an unhappy malefic brings difficulties that require great effort to overcome.

If Sun (the diurnal luminary) is in a diurnal chart, then it is able to show more of what it is in an uninhibited way. Therefore, if Sun represents something positive in a diurnal chart, then it is free to be very positive. If Sun represents something negative in a diurnal chart, then it is free to be very negative. Similarly, if Sun is in a nocturnal chart, then it is somewhat limited in showing what it is.

2.6 House strength

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

In his 1647 book *Christian Astrology*, the English astrologer William Lilly ranked the houses from strongest to weakest as follows: 1, 10, 7, 4, 11, 5, 9, 3, 2, 8, 6, 12. A simplified version of this ranking is presented in TABLE 2.6.

TABLE 2.6: House strength by connection to H1

House Number	House Strength	Connection to H1
1st, 4th, 7th, or 10th	high (100%)	hard major aspect
3rd, 5th, 9th, or 11th	moderate (50%)	soft major aspect
2nd, 6th, 8th, or 12th	low (25%)	minor aspect

The primary consideration for Lilly's ranking is how the houses are connected to H1 (the 1st House) by aspect. With respect to H1, the 10th and 4th Houses are each in square (which is a hard major aspect), the 7th House is in opposition (which is a hard major aspect), the 11th and 3rd Houses are each in sextile (which is a soft major aspect), the 5th and 9th Houses are each in trine (which is a soft major aspect), the 2nd and 12th Houses are each in duodecile (which is a minor aspect), and the 8th and 6th Houses are each in quincunx (which is a minor aspect).

Another consideration for Lilly's ranking is whether a house is angular, succedent, or cadent. Still another consideration for Lilly's ranking is whether a house is diurnal or nocturnal.

The notions of angular, succedent, and cadent houses are defined in terms of a quadrant-house system. The cusp of a house is the dividing line that marks the beginning of that house. In a quadrant-house system, the Ascendant is the 1st-House cusp, the Descendant is the 7th-House cusp, the Midheaven is the 10th-House cusp, and the Imum Coeli is the 4th-House cusp. The locations of other house cusps depend on how the quadrant-house system is defined.

In a quadrant-house system, a house is said to be **angular** if its cusp is one of the angles (the Ascendant, the Descendant, the Midheaven, and the Imum Coeli). Therefore, the 1st, 4th, 7th, and 10th Houses are angular. A planet in an angular house takes effective action quickly.

In a quadrant-house system, a house is said to be **succedent** if it succeeds (that is, comes next in order after) an angular house. Therefore, the 2nd, 5th, 8th, and 11th Houses are succedent. A planet in a succedent house takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

In a quadrant-house system, a house is said to be **cadent** (that is, declining) if it immediately precedes an angular house. Therefore, the 3rd, 6th, 9th, and 12th Houses are cadent. A planet in a cadent house takes effective action at a very slow pace or not at all.

In the whole-sign house system, the 1st House is tied to the sign of the Ascendant, the 7th House is tied to the sign of the Descendant, but the 10th and 4th Houses are not always tied respectively to the signs of the Midheaven and the Imum Coeli. Nevertheless, when dealing with the whole-sign system, we will take the 1st, 4th, 7th, and 10th Houses to be angular, the 2nd, 5th, 8th, and 11th Houses to be succedent, and the 3rd, 6th, 9th, and 12th Houses to be cadent.

2.7 Some Hellenistic lots

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

The noun ‘lot’ may be used to refer to a divinatory tool. The Hellenistic tradition of astrology made use of a number of calculated points as lots. The two most important Hellenistic lots involve the Ascendant, Sun, and Moon. The **Lot of Fortune** (or **Part of Fortune**) is an astrological point that is calculated according to the formula

$$LFo = Asc + Moon - Sun .$$

The **Lot of Spirit** (or **Part of Spirit**) is an astrological point that is calculated according to the formula

$$LSp = Asc + Sun - Moon .$$

The quantities in these formulas are the pertinent ecliptic longitudes.

Intrinsically speaking, Sun refers to activity that follows from one’s volition, while Moon refers to things that are beyond willful control (and hence things to which one must submit). Let’s use these notions to interpret the formulas for the Lots of Fortune and Spirit.

The Greek noun *túkhē* (fortune) refers to luck, which is the occurrence of favorable or unfavorable events that are beyond willful control. Regarding the Lot of Fortune, Sun refers to willed efforts, and Moon refers to good luck. Therefore, the mathematical difference ‘*Moon* minus *Sun*’ figuratively represents traveling the distance from one’s willed efforts (Sun) to good luck (Moon). Adding this difference to the Ascendant makes the journey pertain to oneself specifically. In summary, the Lot of Fortune indicates how and where one can attract good luck to support their efforts.

The Greek noun *daimōn* (spirit) refers to a divine guardian spirit. Regarding the Lot of Spirit, Moon refers to latent, inborn abilities, and Sun represents willed display. Therefore, the mathematical difference ‘*Sun* minus *Moon*’ figuratively represents traveling the distance from one’s abilities as being potential (Moon) to one’s abilities as being realized (Sun). Adding this difference to the Ascendant makes the journey pertain to oneself specifically. In summary, the Lot of Spirit indicates how and where one can wholesomely develop their life potential.

The **Lot of Retribution** is an astrological point that is calculated according to the formula

$$LRe = Asc + Saturn - LFo ,$$

where the quantities in this formula are the pertinent ecliptic longitudes. The Greek noun *némesis* (retribution) refers to punishment administered in return for wrongdoing. The Lot of Retribution

refers to that which brings a justly deserved penalty. The mathematical difference ‘*Saturn* minus *LFo*’ figuratively represents traveling the distance from good luck (Lot of Fortune) to unpleasant limitations (Saturn). Adding this difference to the Ascendant makes the journey pertain to oneself specifically. In summary, the Lot of Retribution indicates how and where one can meet their downfall.

As a calculation example, let’s determine my natal Lots of Fortune, Spirit, and Retribution. In my natal chart (FIGURE 1.6), the Ascendant is at Gemini 06° 24’ 11”, Sun is at Aquarius 24° 08’ 37”, Moon is at Leo 24° 55’ 32”, and Saturn is at Libra 27° 54’ 33”. On making use of TABLE 2.1, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} Asc &= 60^\circ + 06^\circ 24' 11'' = 66^\circ 24' 11'', \\ Sun &= 300^\circ + 24^\circ 08' 37'' = 324^\circ 08' 37'', \\ Moon &= 120^\circ + 24^\circ 55' 32'' = 144^\circ 55' 32'', \\ Saturn &= 180^\circ + 27^\circ 54' 33'' = 207^\circ 54' 33'' \end{aligned}$$

are the pertinent ecliptic longitudes.

For the Lot of Fortune, we get

$$\begin{aligned} LFo &= Asc + Moon - Sun = 66^\circ 24' 11'' + 144^\circ 55' 32'' - 324^\circ 08' 37'' \\ &= -112^\circ 48' 54'' \equiv -112^\circ 48' 54'' + 360^\circ = 247^\circ 11' 06'' \\ &= 240^\circ + 07^\circ 11' 06'', \end{aligned}$$

which is Sagittarius 07° 11’ 06” according to TABLE 2.1. Note that the mathematical symbol ‘ $\equiv$ ’ means ‘is equivalent to’.

For the Lot of Spirit, we get

$$\begin{aligned} LSp &= Asc + Sun - Moon = 66^\circ 24' 11'' + 324^\circ 08' 37'' - 144^\circ 55' 32'' \\ &= 245^\circ 37' 16'' = 240^\circ + 05^\circ 37' 16'', \end{aligned}$$

which is Sagittarius 05° 37’ 16” according to TABLE 2.1.

For the Lot of Retribution, we get

$$\begin{aligned} LRe &= Asc + Saturn - LFo = 66^\circ 24' 11'' + 207^\circ 54' 33'' - 247^\circ 11' 06'' \\ &= 27^\circ 07' 38'' = 0^\circ + 27^\circ 07' 38'', \end{aligned}$$

which is Aries 27° 07’ 38” according to TABLE 2.1.

In calculating the Lots or other angular quantities, we may encounter angles that lie outside the customary range of values. In such cases, we would add or subtract 360° as many times as necessary in order to get an angle that lies within the customary range. In this regard, we will write statements of the form

$$\theta_2 \equiv \theta_1,$$

which says that θ_1 and θ_2 are congruent modulo 360° . In other words, the angles θ_1 and θ_2 are equivalent angles that differ by some nonzero integer multiple of 360° .

As an example, consider a calculation of ecliptic longitude that yields the value of $5791^\circ 10' 42''$. Here we have encountered an angle that lies outside the customary range of values for ecliptic longitude (which is from 0° up to 360°). In this regard, we find that

$$5791^\circ 10' 42'' = 16 \times 360^\circ + 31^\circ 10' 42'' \equiv 31^\circ 10' 42'' ,$$

which tells us that the angle $5791^\circ 10' 42''$ is equivalent to the angle $31^\circ 10' 42''$.

3. SOME HORARY ASTROLOGY

3.1 Introduction

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

Horary astrology is based on the belief that the answer to a query can be determined by casting an astrological chart for the query's time and place of birth. This chart is called a **horary chart**, and the person who is primarily asking the question is called the **querent**. The person(s) or thing(s) that are asked about are called the **quesited**. The query's time of birth is the instant when the querent communicates their query to the astrologer. The query's place of birth is the querent's location when they communicate their query to the astrologer.

In his book *Predictive Astrology Textbook*, astrologer Alexey Borealis presents criteria that show the querent's matter of concern. In this regard, Moon's dispositor indicates what is on the querent's mind with regard to the query. Moreover, Moon's house location shows an area of life that is of great interest to the querent. We will use these two criteria to clarify the query.

Each whole-sign house of an astrological chart is represented by its **house lord**, which is the planet that rules the sign tied to the house in question. For example, if Saturn-ruled Aquarius is tied to the whole-sign 9th-House, then Saturn is the 9th-House lord.

In horary astrology, the 1st House refers to the querent, and the **querent's significator** is usually the 1st-House lord. In some cases, we may take the querent's significator to be a planet in the 1st House. The **quesited's significator** is the lord of the house that refers to the quesited. In most cases, Moon is a co-significator of the querent, but there are some cases in which it is the quesited's significator instead.

In order to get the query's answer, we will apply the following **horary-astrology rubric**:

- **STEP #H1:** Identify the querent's significator. Assess it sect-wise and house-wise.
- **STEP #H2:** Identify the quesited's significator. Assess it sect-wise and house-wise.
- **STEP #H3:** Assess Moon sect-wise and house-wise.
- **STEP #H4:** Give thought to other noteworthy considerations. One such consideration could be occupants of the respective houses of the querent and the quesited.
- **STEP #H5:** Look for major aspects among the querent, the quesited, and Moon.
- **STEP #H6:** Make a judgment.

This rubric (that is, set of procedural rules) is an alteration of the rubric presented by astrologer Mychal A. Bryan in his books *Mastering Traditional Astrology* and *Horary Astrology & the Natal Promise*.

The horary-astrology rubric calls us to make use of the following tools of chart analysis:

- **Sect assessment:** This tool shows a significator's favorable or unfavorable nature. Is the significator good or bad? Is it helpful or harmful?
- **House strength:** This tool shows a significator's ability to take advantage of external factors in order to achieve its agenda (that is, things to be done). At what pace can the significator take effective action?
- **Dispositors:** This tool shows a significator's dependence on another entity. What are the circumstances under which the significator is operating? Is the significator under another's control?
- **Exact aspects:** This tool shows events in which two significators come into contact with each other. If a major aspect is inexact by X degrees, then it indicates that the two pertinent entities will come together in X time units (whether hours, days, weeks, months, or years).
- **Close aspects:** This tool uses close aspects to show a relationship between two significators that occurs over a period of time. This relationship could be a long-term connection, a long-term influence, or a process.

These tools are often adequate for answering the query.

Each classical planet serves as the representative of its house(s) via its accidental role as the house lord. Moreover, each classical planet is the natural representative of some subset of persons, places, or things. We will follow astrologer Mychal A. Bryan by interpreting what a planet is doing firstly as an accidental representative and secondly as a natural representative. Note that the adjective 'accidental' here means 'occurring according to circumstances'.

As declared in Section 1.6, we will be using the sidereal zodiac and the whole-sign house system as our foundation, while overlaying Porphyry houses as nuances.

IMPORTANT COMMENTS: No matter how good or bad your situation may be, seek divine help through prayerful affirmations and other suitable magical work. Be mindful that the power of God is within you, and so you can transcend any circumstance, habit, or personality trait. Tap into your divine power by cultivating good character and wisdom.

3.2 A 3rd-House query: A possible trip

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

Back in the fall of 2020, I considered driving my car to New Orleans, Louisiana in order to visit my friend JRM around his birthday in November. On Friday, 23 October 2020 at 01:38 pm, EDT, the following question formed in my mind:

Query: I am considering visiting the New Orleans metro area around the time of my friend JRM's birthday. Would making this visit result in good fortune for me?

FIGURE 3.2 presents the pertinent horary chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāṃśa* here is $24^{\circ} 07' 34''$ according to True Chitrā 0° Libra.

Let's use Moon to clarify the query. Firstly, Moon's dispositor indicates what is on the querent's mind with regard to the query. For Moon in Capricorn, its dispositor is Saturn. As the lord of Aquarius 3rd House (short-distance travel) and Capricorn 2nd House (supportive persons or things; portable property), Saturn refers to my concern about my car being supportive to my proposed drive. Secondly, Moon's house location shows an area of life that is of great interest to the querent. Moon lies in the intersection of Capricorn 2nd House (supportive persons or things; portable property) and PH1 (the querent and their physical vehicle). This house location indicates that the condition of my car is a matter of importance.

FIGURE 3.2: The horary chart

(PC11) 04:17 (PC12) 27:43 12th SC	Su 06:38 (PC10) 10:51 Me 11:13 R 11th LI	Ve 00:38 (PC9) 04:17 10th VI		(PC8) 27:43 8th CN
(PC1) 21:09 Ju 25:50 1st SA	Aakhut Em Bak (Horary Chart) A proposed drive to New Orleans Friday, 23 OCT 2020 at 13:38 EDT Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 21:09 7th GE
Sa 01:42 Mo 08:45 (PC2) 27:43 2nd CP		(PC3) 04:17 Ma 24:03 R 4th PI	(PC4) 10:51 5th AR	(PC5) 04:17 (PC6) 27:43 6th TA

Now that we have clarified the query, let's use the horary-astrology rubric to get the answer.

STEP #H1: Firstly, let's identify the querent's significator. The querent (me) is associated with the 1st House. Because Jupiter-ruled Sagittarius is tied to the 1st House, Jupiter is the 1st-House lord. Secondly, let's assess the querent's significator sect-wise and house-wise:

Jupiter in Sagittarius 1st House: Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 4th House (comfort and security) and Sagittarius 1st House (the querent), and it is the natural representative of noble-minded action. Jupiter lies in the intersection of Sagittarius 1st House and PH1, both houses referring to the querent. In light of the foregoing, Jupiter refers to me as someone seeking safety.

As a diurnal benefic in a diurnal chart, Jupiter is 'happy'. Therefore, Jupiter is very beneficial. The 1st House and PH1 each allow 100% house strength, and so Jupiter's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(100\% + 100\%) = 100\%$. Therefore, Jupiter takes effective action quickly.

Circumstances are to my advantage.

STEP #H2: Firstly, let's identify the quesited's significator. The quesited pertains to my proposed trip, which is associated with the 3rd House (short-distance travel). Because Saturn-ruled Aquarius is tied to the 3rd House, Saturn is the 3rd-House lord and hence the quesited's significator. Secondly, let's assess the quesited's significator sect-wise and house-wise:

Saturn in Capricorn 2nd House: Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 3rd House (short-distance travel) and Capricorn 2nd House (supportive persons or things; portable property), and it is the natural representative of sober-minded action. Saturn lies in the intersection of Capricorn 2nd House (supportive persons or things) and PH1 (the querent and their physical vehicle). In light of the foregoing, Saturn refers to my car as being supportive to my proposed drive.

As a diurnal malefic in a diurnal chart, Saturn is 'happy'. Therefore, Saturn brings difficulties that require moderate effort to overcome. The 2nd House allows 50% house strength, while PH1 allows 100% house strength, and so Saturn's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(50\% + 100\%) = 75\%$. Therefore, Saturn takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

The condition of my car poses a problem, but circumstances favor me to remedy the situation at a relatively good pace.

STEP #H3: Moon is a co-significator of the querent. Let's assess Moon sect-wise and house-wise:

Moon in Capricorn 2nd House: Moon is the lord of Cancer 8th House (life-threatening situations), and it is the natural representative of short-term travel. Moon lies in the intersection of Capricorn 2nd House (supportive persons or things; portable property) and PH1 (the querent and their physical vehicle). In light of the foregoing, Moon refers to my concern about taking a trip.

As the nocturnal luminary in a diurnal chart, Moon is 'unhappy'. Therefore, benefic waxing Moon is moderately beneficial. The 2nd House allows 50% house strength, while PH1 allows 100% house strength, and so Moon's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(50\% + 100\%) = 75\%$. Therefore, Moon takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

Circumstances favor me to take my proposed trip.

STEP #H4: Let's give thought to other noteworthy considerations. There is nothing in this regard.

STEP #H5: Let's look for major aspects among the querent, the quesited, and Moon. Jupiter (the querent) is applying to a conjunction with Saturn (the quesited):

Jupiter-Saturn conjunction: As previously found, Jupiter refers to me as someone seeking safety. Moreover, as previously found, Saturn refers to my car as being supportive to my proposed drive. The applying conjunction here indicates an opportunity for me to have a safe trip in my car.

Taking my proposed drive can result in good fortune for me.

STEP #H6: I am the astrologer, and here is my judgment. Apart from the condition of my car, taking my proposed drive seems favorable.

COMMENTS: My chart analysis here is somewhat the product of hindsight. At the time when I cast the chart for the query here, I didn't understand what it was telling me. Nevertheless, I felt uncomfortable about driving out of town, and so I remained in Atlanta around the time of JRM's birthday. It was during that time that my car battery failed and needed to be replaced.

3.3 A 6th-House query: My battle against diabetes

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

In early 2022, I was given the bad news of having a condition of type-2 diabetes. After making many prayerful affirmations and changing my diet, I have come to the point of moderating my blood sugar without the use of medications. On Wednesday, 29 January 2025 at 08:00 am, EST, the following question formed in my mind:

Query: Is my body mending from diabetes?

FIGURE 3.3 presents the pertinent horary chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāmśa* here is 24° 11' 35" according to True Chitrā 0° Libra.

FIGURE 3.3: The horary chart

(PC11) 02:21 (PC12) 27:09	(PC10) 07:33	(PC9) 02:21		(PC8) 27:09
12th SA	11th SC	10th LI	9th VI	8th LE
Me 08:07 Su 15:40 Mo 15:53 (PC1) 21:57 1st CP	Aakhut Em Bak (Horary Chart) Is my body mending from diabetes? Wednesday, 29 JAN 2025 at 08:00 EST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 21:57 7th CN
Sa 22:57 (PC2) 27:09	Ve 01:15	(PC3) 02:21	(PC4) 07:33 Ju 17:08 R	(PC5) 02:21 Ma 27:01 R (PC6) 27:09
2nd AQ	3rd PI	4th AR	5th TA	6th GE

Let's use Moon to clarify the query. Firstly, Moon's dispositor indicates what is on the querent's mind with regard to the query. For Moon in Capricorn, its dispositor is Saturn. As the lord of Aquarius 2nd House (supportive persons or things) and Capricorn 1st House (the querent's physical body and its health), Saturn refers to my concern about my physical body being supportive to good health. Secondly, Moon's house location shows an area of life that is of great interest to the querent. Moon lies in the intersection of Capricorn 1st House (the querent's physical body and its health) and PH12 (chronic illness). This house location indicates that I am concerned about my diabetes condition.

Now that we have clarified the query, let's use the horary-astrology rubric to get the answer.

STEP #H1: Firstly, let's identify the querent's significator. The querent (me) is associated with the 1st House. Because Saturn-ruled Capricorn is tied to the 1st House, Saturn is the 1st-House lord and hence the querent's significator. Secondly, let's assess the querent's significator sect-wise and house-wise:

Saturn in Aquarius 2nd House: Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 2nd House (supportive persons or things) and Capricorn 1st House (the querent's physical body and its health), and it is the natural representative of sober-minded action. Saturn lies in the intersection of Aquarius 2nd House (supportive persons or things) and PH1 (the querent's physical body and its health). In light of the foregoing, Saturn refers to my physical body as being supportive to good health.

As a diurnal malefic in a diurnal chart, Saturn is 'happy'. Therefore, Saturn brings difficulties that require moderate effort to overcome. The 2nd House allows 25% house strength, while PH1 allows 100% house strength, and so Saturn's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(25\% + 100\%) = 62.5\%$. Therefore, Saturn takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

Circumstances favor me to remedy the situation at a relatively good pace.

STEP #H2: Firstly, let's identify the quesited's significator. The quesited pertains to my diabetes condition, which is associated with the 12th House (chronic illness). Because Jupiter-ruled Sagittarius is tied to the 12th House, Jupiter is the 12th-House lord and hence the quesited's significator. Secondly, let's assess the quesited's significator sect-wise and house-wise:

Jupiter in Taurus 5th House: Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 3rd House (illness persistence) and Sagittarius 12th House (chronic illness), and it is the natural representative of the pancreas. Note that with respect to the 12th House, the 3rd House is the derived 4th House (comfort and security). Jupiter lies in the intersection of Taurus 5th House (overdoing pleasure) and PH4 (comfort and security). In light of the foregoing, Jupiter refers to persistence of my diabetes condition, which is primarily linked to issues with the pancreas.

As a diurnal benefic in a diurnal chart, Jupiter is 'happy'. Therefore, Jupiter is very beneficial. The 5th House allows 50% house strength, while PH4 allows 100% house strength, and so Jupiter's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(50\% + 100\%) = 75\%$. Therefore, Jupiter takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

Circumstances favor my diabetes condition to persist.

STEP #H3: Moon is a co-significator of the querent. Let's assess Moon sect-wise and house-wise:

Moon in Capricorn 1st House: Moon the lord of Cancer 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm), and it is the natural representative of the digestive system. Moon lies in the intersection of Capricorn 1st House (the querent's physical body and its health) and PH12 (chronic illness). In light of the foregoing, Moon refers to the danger posed by digestive illness.

As the nocturnal luminary in a diurnal chart, Moon is 'unhappy'. Therefore, benefic waxing Moon is moderately beneficial. The 1st House allows 100% house strength, while PH12 allows 25% house strength, and so Moon's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(100\% + 25\%) = 62.5\%$. Therefore, Moon takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

Circumstances favor my digestive illness to persist.

STEP #H4: Let's give thought to other noteworthy considerations. Sun is the lord of Leo 8th House (an ending that facilitates transformation), and it is the natural representative of the will to survive. As the diurnal luminary in a diurnal chart, Sun is able to show more of what it is in an uninhibited way.

A planet is said to be **under the beams** if it is within 15° of Sun's location. Whenever a planet is under the beams, its light is overpowered by Sun, and it becomes hidden from view. Being under the beams refers to something that is overpowered or hidden from view with regard to the planet's role in the astrological chart.

Within the intersection of Capricorn 1st House (the querent's physical body and its health) and PH12 (chronic illness), Moon and Mercury are under the beams. As previously found, Moon refers to my digestive illness. Mercury is the natural representative of the nervous system, and it refers here to the mild nerve damage (in my feet) that accompanies my diabetes condition. Moon and Mercury are each in conjunction with Sun, and their proximity to Sun is a visual representation of my diabetes condition as being burned up by my will to survive.

STEP #H5: Let's look for major aspects among the querent, the quesited, and Moon. Jupiter (the quesited) is separating from a dexter square with Saturn (the querent):

Jupiter-Saturn square: As previously found, Jupiter refers to persistence of my diabetes condition. Moreover, as previously found, Saturn refers to my physical body as being supportive to good health. According to the principle of overcoming, Saturn dominates the aspect here. The separating square here indicates that I am already bringing my diabetes condition into line with my agenda of having good bodily health.

Moon is applying to a sinister trine with Jupiter.

Moon-Jupiter trine: As previously found, Moon refers to the danger posed by my digestive illness. Moreover, as previously found, Jupiter refers to the persistence of my diabetes condition. According to the principle of overcoming, Moon dominates the aspect here. The applying trine here indicates an opportunity for my digestive illness to help my diabetes condition to continue its detrimental effects.

The gut microbiome is the variety of bacteria and other microorganisms living in the digestive tract. An unhealthy gut microbiome can lead to type-2 diabetes.

STEP #H6: I am the astrologer, and here is my judgment. My body is not in good condition, but it is healing. My diabetes condition is gradually abating. In order to further my well-being, I must pay attention to my gut microbiome.

COMMENTS: On Thursday, 30 January 2025, I posed the query here to the *Yi-Jing* Oracle. The response was Hexagram 02 (KÜN, 'submissiveness'), which corresponds to astrological Moon. In medical astrology, Moon refers to the digestive system.

3.4 A 7th-House query: Racial relations in America

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

On Saturday, 15 February 2025 at 07:58 am, EST, the following question formed in my mind:

Query: What are African Americans to learn from our historical interactions with Caucasian Americans in this country?

FIGURE 3.4 presents the pertinent horary chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāmśa* here is $24^{\circ} 11' 42''$ according to True Chitrā 0° Libra.

FIGURE 3.4: The horary chart

(PC12) 17:16	(PC11) 20:02	(PC10) 22:49	(PC9) 20:02	Mo 06:24 (PC8) 17:16
12th CP	11th SA	10th SC	9th LI	8th VI
Su 02:53 Me 07:42 (PC1) 14:29 Sa 24:52 1st AQ	Aakhut Em Bak (Horary Chart) Racial relations in America Saturday, 15 FEB 2025 at 07:58 EST Atlanta, GA ($33^{\circ} 45' N$; $84^{\circ} 23' W$)			(PC7) 14:29 7th LE
Ve 12:48 (PC2) 17:16	(PC3) 20:02	Ju 17:17 (PC4) 22:49	(PC5) 20:02 Ma 23:17 R	(PC6) 17:16
2nd PI	3rd AR	4th TA	5th GE	6th CN

African Americans are an American ethno-racial group consisting of partial or total ancestry from any of the dark-skinned racial groups of Africa. Caucasian Americans are an American ethno-racial group consisting of partial or total ancestry from any of the pale-skinned racial groups of Europe. Note that ethnic identity is based on cultural characteristics, while racial identity is based on physical characteristics. African Americans are the ‘we’ group to which I (the querent) belong. Therefore, the term ‘querent’ may be extended here to refer to African Americans as a group.

In the 1500s, European colonial powers began establishing plantations in the Americas in order to produce cash crops like sugar, tobacco, and cotton. These Caucasian powers turned to enslaving African captives in order to acquire the labor force in support of their plantation industry. Even after the 1865 abolition of slavery in America, there has been a power differential in which Caucasian Americans have abused African Americans. A power differential is an imbalance of power in a relationship where one individual or group has more authority, influence, or control than another. In the presence of the aforementioned racial power differential, there cannot be racial harmony, which is the peaceful coexistence and respectful cooperation of people from diverse racial and ethnic backgrounds within a society.

Let's use Moon to clarify the query. Firstly, Moon's dispositor indicates what is on the querent's mind with regard to the query. For Moon in Virgo, its dispositor is Mercury. As the lord of Gemini 5th House (personal interests) and Virgo 8th House (unwholesome communal influences), Mercury refers to my concern about unwholesome influences that have plagued the African-American community. Note that we are viewing the 8th House here as the derived 6th House (being subject to unwholesome influences) with respect to the 3rd House (community). Secondly, Moon's house location shows an area of life that is of great interest to the querent. Moon lies in the intersection of Virgo 8th House (unwholesome communal influences) and PH7 (opponents). This house location indicates that I am greatly interested in how opponents have afflicted the African-American community.

Now that we have clarified the query, let's use the horary-astrology rubric to get the answer.

STEP #H1: Firstly, let's identify the querent's significator. The querent (African Americans as an ethno-racial group) is associated with the 1st House. Because Saturn-ruled Aquarius is tied to the 1st House, Saturn is the 1st-House lord and hence the querent's significator. Secondly, let's assess the querent's significator sect-wise and house-wise:

Saturn in Aquarius 1st House: Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 1st House (the querent's well-being) and Capricorn 12th House (trying situations), and it is the natural representative of restraints and limitations. Saturn lies in the intersection of Aquarius 1st House and PH1, both houses referring to the querent's well-being. In light of the foregoing, Saturn refers to African Americans as undergoing trials and tribulations.

As a diurnal malefic in a diurnal chart, Saturn is 'happy'. Therefore, Saturn brings difficulties that require moderate effort to overcome. The 1st House and PH1 each allow 100% house strength, and so Saturn's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(100\% + 100\%) = 100\%$. Therefore, Saturn takes effective action quickly.

African Americans have endured trying situations, but circumstances are to our advantage.

STEP #H2: Firstly, let's identify the quesited's significator. The quesited pertains to Caucasian Americans as an ethno-racial group, which is associated with the 7th House (someone else). Because Sun-ruled Leo is tied to the 7th House, Sun is the 7th-House lord and hence the quesited's significator. Secondly, let's assess the quesited's significator sect-wise and house-wise:

Sun in Aquarius 1st House: Sun is the lord of Leo 7th House (someone else), and it is the natural representative of leaders and bosses. Sun lies in the intersection of Aquarius 1st House (the querent's well-being) and PH12 (trying situations; hidden enemies). In light of the foregoing, Sun refers to Caucasian Americans as being an adversarial authoritative influence.

As the diurnal luminary in a diurnal chart, Sun is able to show more of what it is in an uninhibited way. The 1st House allows 100% house strength, while PH12 allows 25% house strength, and so Sun's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(100\% + 25\%) = 62.5\%$. Therefore, Sun takes effective action at a relatively good pace. Saturn (the house lord) disposes Sun, and so Sun is somehow dependent on it.

Caucasian Americans have abused their authority by taking advantage of African Americans for their own ends.

STEP #H3: Moon is a co-significator of the querent. Let's assess Moon sect-wise and house-wise:

Moon in Virgo 8th House: Moon is the lord of Cancer 6th House (being subject to unwholesome influences), and it is the natural representative of compliant people. Moon lies in the intersection of Virgo 8th House (life-threatening situations) and PH7 (opponents). In light of the foregoing, Moon refers to African Americans as being subject to unwholesome influences from opponents.

As the nocturnal luminary in a diurnal chart, Moon is 'unhappy'. Therefore, malefic waning Moon brings difficulties that require great effort to overcome. The 8th House allows 25% house strength, while PH7 allows 100% house strength, and so Moon's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(25\% + 100\%) = 62.5\%$. Therefore, Moon takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

African Americans have been in bad condition, but circumstances are to our advantage.

STEP #H4: Let's give thought to other noteworthy considerations. Mercury is separating from a conjunction with Sun (the quesited):

Mercury-Sun conjunction: As previously found, Mercury refers to unwholesome influences that have plagued the African-American community. Moreover, as previously found, Sun refers to Caucasian Americans as being an adversarial authoritative influence. The separating conjunction here indicates that Caucasian Americans have been a source of unwholesome influences in the African-American community.

Let's move on!

STEP #H5: Let's look for major aspects among the querent, the quesited, and Moon. Moon (the querent) is separating from a sinister quincunx with Sun (the quesited):

Moon-Sun quincunx: As previously found, Moon refers to African Americans as being subject to unwholesome influences. Moreover, as previously found, Sun refers to Caucasian Americans as an adversarial authoritative influence. The separating quincunx aspect here indicates that there has been no common ground between Moon and Sun.

Note that the quincunx is a hard minor aspect.

STEP #H6: I am the astrologer, and here is my judgment. There is a power differential in which Caucasian Americans have mistreated African Americans. In this regard, the historical interactions between African Americans and Caucasian Americans have been mostly negative.

COMMENTS: On Saturday, 15 February 2025, I posed the query here to the *Yi-Jing* Oracle. The response was Hexagram 23 (Bō, 'deteriorating') changing at Lines 4 and 6, thereby showing Hexagram 16 (Yü, 'enthusiasm'). Caucasian Americans (an ethno-racial group) have been a force of deterioration that has weakened the well-being of African Americans. Nevertheless, African Americans are advised to take action that is aimed at faring well in the long run.

3.5 A 9th-House query: Improving my astrology skills

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

On Tuesday, 24 December 2024 at 09:42 am, EST, the following question formed in my mind:

Query: How might I best improve my skills as an astrologer?

FIGURE 3.5 presents the pertinent horary chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāṃśa* here is 24° 11' 17" according to True Chitrā 0° Libra.

FIGURE 3.5: The horary chart

Su 09:05 (PC12) 15:47 12th SA	Me 17:09 (PC11) 21:52 11th SC	(PC10) 27:57 10th LI	(PC9) 21:52 Mo 27:14 9th VI	(PC8) 15:47 8th LE
(PC1) 09:42 Ve 25:28 1st CP	Aakhut Em Bak (Horary Chart) Improving my astrology skills Tuesday, 24 DEC 2024 at 09:42 EST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 09:42 Ma 09:50 R 7th CN
(PC2) 15:47 Sa 19:48 2nd AQ	(PC3) 21:52 3rd PI	(PC4) 27:57 4th AR	Ju 19:52 R (PC5) 21:52 5th TA	(PC6) 15:47 6th GE

Let's use Moon to clarify the query. Firstly, Moon's dispositor indicates what is on the querent's mind with regard to the query. For Moon in Virgo, its dispositor is Mercury. As the lord of Gemini 6th House (being of service to others) and Virgo 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how), Mercury refers to my concern about using astrology to be of service to others. Secondly, Moon's house location shows an area of life that is of great interest to the querent. Moon lies in the intersection of Virgo 9th House and PH9, both houses referring to spiritual or professional know-how. This house location indicates that I am greatly interested in acquiring astrological know-how.

Now that we have clarified the query, let's use the horary-astrology rubric to get the answer.

STEP #H1: Firstly, let's identify the querent's significator. The querent (me) is associated with the 1st House. Because Saturn-ruled Capricorn is tied to the 1st House, Saturn is the 1st-House lord and hence the querent's significator. Secondly, let's assess the querent's significator sect-wise and house-wise:

Saturn in Aquarius 2nd House: Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 2nd House (supportive persons or things) and Capricorn 1st House (the querent's well-being), and it is the natural representative of sober-minded action. Saturn lies in the intersection of Aquarius 2nd House and PH2, both houses referring to supportive persons or things. In light of the foregoing, Saturn refers to me as becoming astrologically resourced (that is, having all the resources necessary to function properly).

As a diurnal malefic in a diurnal chart, Saturn is 'happy'. Therefore, Saturn brings difficulties that require moderate effort to overcome. The 2nd House and PH2 each allow 25% house strength, and so Saturn's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(25\% + 25\%) = 25\%$. Therefore, Saturn takes effective action at a very slow pace or not at all.

Improving my astrology skills involves moderate effort and gradual development.

STEP #H2: Firstly, let's identify the quesited's significator. The quesited pertains to astrological know-how, which is associated with the 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how). Because Mercury-ruled Virgo is tied to the 9th House, Mercury is the 9th-House lord and hence the quesited's significator. Secondly, let's assess the quesited's significator sect-wise and house-wise:

Mercury in Scorpio 11th House: Mercury is the lord of Gemini 6th House (being of service to others) and Virgo 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how), and it is the natural representative of expertise. Mercury lies in the intersection of Scorpio 11th House (fulfilling one's wishes) and PH10 (achieving something significant). Mercury refers to me as using astrology to be of service to others.

Mercury is malefic because its dispositor is malefic Mars. Mercury lies zodiacally behind Sun, and so it is diurnal. As a diurnal malefic in a diurnal chart, Mercury is 'happy'. Therefore, Mercury brings difficulties that require moderate effort to overcome. The 11th House allows 50% house strength, while PH10 allows 100% house strength, and so Mercury's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(50\% + 100\%) = 75\%$. Therefore, Mercury takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

It will take some effort for me to get to the point where I can use astrology to help others.

STEP #H3: Moon is a co-significator of the querent. Let's assess Moon sect-wise and house-wise:

Moon in Virgo 9th House: Moon is the lord of Cancer 7th House (divine cooperation), and it is the natural representative of stages of change. Moon lies in the intersection of Virgo 9th House and PH9, both houses referring to spiritual or professional know-how. In light of the foregoing, Moon refers to me as being engaged in a learning process guided by my intuition.

As the nocturnal luminary in a diurnal chart, Moon is 'unhappy'. Therefore, malefic waning Moon brings difficulties that require great effort to overcome. The 9th House and PH9 each allow 50% house strength, and so Moon's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(50\% + 50\%) = 50\%$. Therefore, Moon takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

Improving my astrology skills requires great effort.

STEP #H4: Let's give thought to other noteworthy considerations. There is nothing in this regard.

STEP #H5: Let's look for major aspects among the querent, the quesited, and Moon. Mercury (the quesited) is applying to a sinister square with Saturn (the querent):

Mercury-Saturn square: As previously found, Mercury refers to me as using astrology to be of service to others. Moreover, as previously found, Saturn refers to me as becoming astrologically resourced. According to the principle of overcoming, Mercury dominates the aspect here. The applying square here indicates a call for me to bring my astrological know-how into line with me being of service to others.

Improving my astrology skills involves diligent, unselfish efforts.

STEP #H6: I am the astrologer, and here is my judgment. The way is open for me to make progress in furthering my astrological know-how with an aim at helping others.

COMMENTS: On Wednesday, 25 December 2024, I posed the query here to the *Yi-Jing* Oracle. The response was Hexagram 54 (GUÌ MÈI, 'the junior wife') changing at Lines 2 and 4, thereby showing Hexagram 24 (FÜ, 'returning'). I am advised here to follow due process. Regarding the query, this means learning fundamental astrological knowledge and skills, listening to elder astrologers, finding out what truly matters, and complying with ethical standards of behavior.

3.6 Someone else's query

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

My friend TJB is divorced from his former wife, who has been denying him the opportunity to spend quality time with their son BB. On Friday, 31 January 2025 at 10:58 pm, CST, my friend TJB (in New Orleans, Louisiana) presented the following query to me (in Atlanta, Georgia) during a telephone conversation.

Query: How might I best help my son BB at this time?

FIGURE 3.6 presents the pertinent horary chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāmśa* here is 24° 11' 36" according to True Chitrā 0° Libra.

Let's use Moon to clarify the query. Firstly, Moon's dispositor indicates what is on the querent's mind with regard to the query. For Moon in Aquarius, its dispositor is Saturn. As the lord of Aquarius 6th House (being of service to others) and Capricorn 5th House (children), Saturn refers to TJB's concern about being a helpful parent to his son. Secondly, Moon's house location shows an area of life that is of great interest to the querent. Moon lies in the intersection of Aquarius 6th House (being of service to others) and PH5 (children). This house location indicates that it is important to TJB that he be a helpful parent to his son.

Now that we have clarified the query, let's use the horary-astrology rubric to get the answer.

STEP #H1: Firstly, let's identify the querent's significator. The querent (my friend TJB) is associated with the 1st House. Because Mercury-ruled Virgo is tied to the 1st House, Mercury is the 1st-House lord and hence the querent's significator. Secondly, let's assess querent's significator sect-wise and house-wise:

Mercury in Capricorn 5th House: Mercury is the lord of Gemini 10th House (achieving something significant) and Virgo 1st House (the querent), and it is the natural representative of clever action. Mercury lies in the intersection of Capricorn 5th House (children) and PH4 (parents). In light of the foregoing, Mercury refers to TJB as working at achieving a wholesome father-son relationship.

Mercury is malefic because its dispositor is malefic Saturn. Mercury lies zodiacally behind Sun, and so it is diurnal. As a diurnal malefic in a nocturnal chart, Mercury is ‘unhappy’. Therefore, Mercury brings difficulties that require great effort to overcome. The 5th House allows 50% house strength, while PH4 allows 100% house strength, and so Mercury’s overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(50\% + 100\%) = 75\%$. Therefore, Mercury takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

It has been difficult for TJB to spend quality time with his son BB, but circumstances favor him to remedy the situation at a relatively good pace.

FIGURE 3.6: The horary chart

(PC12) 28:58	(PC11) 29:28	Ma 26:12 R (PC10) 29:59	Ju 17:06 R (PC9) 29:28	(PC8) 28:58
12th LE	11th CN	10th GE	9th TA	8th AR
(PC1) 28:27	TJB (Horary Chart) Helping my son BB Friday, 31 JAN 2025 at 22:58 CST New Orleans, LA (29° 57' N; 90° 05' W)			Ve 03:24 (PC7) 28:27
1st VI				7th PI
(PC2) 28:58	(PC3) 29:28	(PC4) 29:59	Me 12:31 Su 18:23 (PC5) 29:28	Sa 23:15 Mo 23:43 (PC6) 28:58
2nd LI	3rd SC	4th SA	5th CP	6th AQ

STEP #H2: Firstly, let’s identify the quesited’s significator. The quesited pertains to TJB’s son BB, who is associated with the 5th House (children). Because Saturn-ruled Capricorn is tied to the 5th House, Saturn is the 5th-House lord and hence the quesited’s significator. Secondly, let’s assess the quesited’s significator sect-wise and house-wise:

Saturn in Aquarius 6th House: Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 6th House (being of service to others) and Capricorn 5th House (children), and it is the natural representative of sober-minded action. Saturn lies in the intersection of Aquarius 6th House (being of service to others) and PH5 (children). Saturn refers to helping BB as being TJB’s concern.

As a diurnal malefic in a nocturnal chart, Saturn is ‘unhappy’. Therefore, Saturn brings difficulties that require great effort to overcome. The 6th House allows 25% house strength,

while PH5 allows 50% house strength, and so Saturn's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(25\% + 50\%) = 37.5\%$. Therefore, Saturn takes effective action at a very slow pace or not at all.

Cultivating a wholesome father-son relationship involves great effort and patience.

STEP #H3: Moon is a co-significator of the querent. Let's assess Moon sect-wise and house-wise:

Moon in Aquarius 6th House: Moon is the lord of Cancer 11th House (fulfilling one's wishes), and it is the natural representative of nurturers. Moon lies in the intersection of Aquarius 6th House (being of service to others) and PH5 (children). In light of the foregoing, Moon refers to TJB as wishing to be a nurturing father.

As the nocturnal luminary in a nocturnal chart, Moon is 'happy'. Therefore, benefic waxing Moon is very beneficial. The 6th House allows 25% house strength, while PH5 allows 50% house strength, and so Moon's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(25\% + 50\%) = 37.5\%$. Therefore, Moon takes effective action at a very slow pace or not at all.

TJB must work at fulfilling his wish to be a nurturing father.

STEP #H4: Let's give thought to other noteworthy considerations. Mercury (the querent) is applying to a conjunction with Sun:

Mercury-Sun conjunction: As previously found, Mercury refers to TJB as working at achieving a wholesome father-son relationship. Sun is the lord of Leo 12th House (unpleasant limitations), and it is the natural representative of fathers. Sun lies in the intersection of Capricorn 5th House (children) and PH4 (parents). In light of the foregoing, Sun refers to TJB as experiencing unpleasant limitations on his fatherhood. The applying conjunction here indicates an opportunity to have a wholesome father-son relationship.

Regarding fatherhood, Mercury accidentally represents TJB, while Sun naturally represents TJB.

STEP #H5: Let's look for major aspects among the querent, the quesited, and Moon. Moon (the querent) is separating from a conjunction with Saturn (the quesited):

Moon-Saturn conjunction: As previously found, Moon refers to TJB as wishing to be a nurturing father. Moreover, as previously found, Saturn refers to helping BB as being TJB's concern. The separating conjunction here indicates that TJB has already made some progress in achieving a wholesome father-son relationship.

TJB will eventually achieve a wholesome relationship with his son BB.

STEP #H6: I am the astrologer, and here is my judgment. At this time, TJB can help his son by being of service. The blogger Steve Errey stated: "A somewhat whimsical and naïve view perhaps, but giving without expectation of receiving is the truest definition of being of service."⁴

⁴ Errey, Steve, *The 8 Laws of Being of Service* (23 July 2012), < <https://copyblogger.com/being-of-service/> >.

4. SOME NATAL ASTROLOGY

4.1 Introduction

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

Natal astrology is a system of astrology that is based on the belief that a person's potential (that is, latent but unrealized abilities), opportunities, and challenges can be determined by casting an astrological chart for the person's time and place of birth. This chart is called a **natal chart**, and the person for whom it is cast is called the **native**.

Each whole-sign house of an astrological chart is represented by its **house lord**, which is the planet that rules the sign tied to the house in question. For example, if Saturn-ruled Aquarius is tied to the whole-sign 9th-House, then Saturn is the 9th-House lord. Each classical planet serves as the representative of its house(s) via its accidental role as the house lord. Moreover, each classical planet is the natural representative of some subset of persons, places, or things. We will follow astrologer Mychal A. Bryan by interpreting what a planet is doing firstly as an accidental representative and secondly as a natural representative. Note that the adjective 'accidental' here means 'occurring according to circumstances'.

As declared in Section 1.6, we will be using the sidereal zodiac and the whole-sign house system as our foundation, while overlaying Porphyry houses as nuances.

IMPORTANT COMMENTS: Astrologer Isabel M. Hickey said that: "Fate is earmarked in tendencies, not in facts. All anyone can see in a birth chart are tendencies that will become facts if one does not do something to alter them." In the divinatory corpus of the *Ifá* spiritual system, it says in chapter *Ogbè Ògúndá* that: "It is character alone that speaks. Personal destiny is never bad in *Ilé-Ifẹ̀* (a *Yorubá* town that symbolizes earthly life). It is character alone that speaks." No one is born into the world with a bad destiny; it is one's character that makes or breaks them.

4.2 The natal chart

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

On Tuesday, 15 January 1929, Michael King Jr. was born to Michael King Sr. and his wife Alberta Williams King at the family home (501 Auburn Avenue) in Atlanta, Georgia. According to his mother Alberta, the junior King was born at high noon. After returning from a trip to Germany in August 1934, the senior King changed his own name to Martin Luther King Sr. and his son's name to Martin Luther King Jr.

The late Dr. Martin Luther King Jr. was a civil-rights leader who campaigned against racial injustice in America. King famously said: "Injustice anywhere is a threat to justice everywhere." Moreover, he famously said: "The arc of the moral universe is long, but it bends toward justice."

FIGURE 4.2 presents the natal chart of Martin Luther King Jr. in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāṃśa* here is 22° 51' 05" according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. Note that Atlanta was in the Central Time Zone until legislation switched it to the Eastern Time Zone on Friday, 21 March 1941.

FIGURE 4.2: King's natal chart

(PC12) 15:45 12th PI	(PC11) 10:33 Ve 17:42 LSp 26:30 Mo 26:44 11th AQ	Su 02:16 (PC10) 05:21 Me 18:54 10th CP	Sa 02:30 (PC9) 10:33 9th SA	(PC8) 15:45 8th SC
Ju 08:19 (PC1) 20:57 1st AR	Martin Luther King Jr. Natal Chart (Sidereal Whole-Sign Houses) Tuesday, 15 JAN 1929 at 12:00 CST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			LRe 08:02 (PC7) 20:57 7th LI
(PC2) 15:45 Ma 29:02 R 2nd TA	(PC3) 10:33 LFo 15:24 3rd GE	(PC4) 05:21 4th CN	(PC5) 10:33 5th LE	(PC6) 15:45 6th VI

In this section, we will take a basic look at King's natal chart by: [1] examining the 1st House, [2] examining the Lots of Fortune, Spirit, and Retribution, and [3] looking for interesting astrological configurations.

EXAMINING THE 1ST HOUSE

In natal astrology, the 1st House refers to the native. More specifically, the 1st House refers to the native's persona, which is the vehicle of personality (that is, characteristic way of thinking, feeling, and behaving) through which the native navigates earthly life. Moreover, the 1st House refers to the native's well-being (that is, state of being happy, healthy, and prosperous).

Examining the natal 1st House answers the question "Who is the native?" in astrological terms. In order to examine the 1st House, it is useful to consider: [1] the Ascendant and major aspects to it, [2] planets in the 1st House, and [3] the Ascendant ruler and its major aspects.

Firstly, the Ascendant refers to the native's central personality traits. Moreover, planets that make major aspects to the Ascendant indicate factors that add to the native's central personality traits. Secondly, planets in the 1st House further indicate factors that add to the native's central personality traits. Thirdly, the Ascendant ruler represents the native, and its house location indicates where the native gives great attention and great effort. Moreover, planets that make

major aspects with the Ascendant ruler indicate factors that affect the Ascendant ruler for good or for bad.

In King's natal chart, PC1 (the Ascendant) is at Aries 20° 57' 33". The Ascendant refers to the native's central personality traits:

Aries Ascendant: The sign Aries expresses Mars in a masculine way. As a fire sign, Aries is desirous, energetic, and forthright. As a cardinal sign, Aries initiates action and creates change. Like a combative ram, Aries likes challenges and has an abundant amount of physical energy. Aries is courageous and pioneering – he is always ready to take risks. In his eagerness to get things done, he is inclined to act first and think later. Like a charging ram, he rushes headlong into situations without considering the consequences. At his best, masculine Aries has the courage to jump into action in order to enthusiastically pursue worthy goals.

Let's move on!

Moon is making a sinister sextile to PC1:

Moon in Aquarius 11th House: Moon is the lord of Cancer 4th House (parents), and it is the natural representative of nurturers. Moon lies in the intersection of Aquarius 11th House and PH11, both houses referring to comrades and shared interests. At his best, masculine Aquarius is unselfish and makes improvements for the common good. In light of the foregoing, Moon refers to King as taking on a fatherly role in order to further the common good.

As the nocturnal luminary in a diurnal chart, Moon is 'unhappy'. Therefore, benefic waxing Moon is moderately beneficial. The 11th House and PH11 each allow 50% house strength, and so Moon's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(50\% + 50\%) = 50\%$. Therefore, Moon takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

Mercury is making a sinister square to PC1:

Mercury in Capricorn 10th House: Mercury is the lord of Gemini 3rd House (community) and Virgo 6th House (being of service to others), and it is the natural representative of clever action, speech, and expertise. Mercury lies in the intersection of Capricorn 10th House and PH10, both houses referring to achieving something significant. At her best, feminine Capricorn is diligent – she gives steady, meticulous attention to ongoing tasks. In light of the foregoing, Mercury refers to King as achieving something significant by being a clever, diligent advocate for his community.

Mercury is malefic because its dispositor is malefic Saturn. Mercury lies zodiacally ahead of Sun, and so it is nocturnal. As a nocturnal malefic in a diurnal chart, Mercury is 'unhappy'. Therefore, Mercury brings difficulties that require great effort to overcome. The 10th House and PH10 each allow 100% house strength, and so Mercury's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(100\% + 100\%) = 100\%$. Therefore, Mercury takes effective action quickly.

Venus is making a sinister sextile to PC1:

Venus in Aquarius 11th House: Venus is the lord of Libra 7th House (partnerships) and Taurus 2nd House (supportive persons or things), and it is the natural representative of friendly action and intimate relationships. Venus lies in the intersection of Aquarius 11th House and PH11, both houses referring to comrades and shared interests. At his best, masculine Aquarius

is unselfish and makes improvements for the common good. In light of the foregoing, Venus refers to King as working together with others in order to further the common good.

As a nocturnal benefic in a diurnal chart, Venus is 'unhappy'. Therefore, Venus is moderately beneficial. The 11th House and PH11 each allow 50% house strength, and so Venus's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(50\% + 50\%) = 50\%$. Therefore, Moon takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

Moon, Mercury, and Venus indicate factors that add to the native's central personality traits.

Let's now consider planets in the 1st House, which further indicate factors that add to the native's central personality traits. Jupiter is in the 1st House:

Jupiter in Aries 1st House: Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 12th House (trying situations) and Sagittarius 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how), and it is the natural representative of noble-minded action, high social position, and religion/spirituality. At his best, masculine Aries has the courage to jump into action in order to enthusiastically pursue worthy goals. In light of the foregoing, Jupiter refers to King as achieving a high position by boldly dealing with trying situations through spiritual guidance.

As a diurnal benefic in a diurnal chart, Jupiter is 'happy'. Therefore, Jupiter is very beneficial. The 10th House and PH10 each allow 100% house strength, and so Jupiter's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(100\% + 100\%) = 100\%$. Therefore, Jupiter takes effective action quickly.

In his book *Stride Toward Freedom*, King wrote that his reformist approach of nonviolent resistance was a courageous confrontation of evil by the power of love.

Let's now consider the Ascendant ruler and its major aspects. Mars rules Aries (the rising sign), and so it is the Ascendant ruler. For Mars, we find the following:

Mars in Taurus 2nd House: Mars is the lord of Aries 1st House (the native's well-being) and Scorpio 8th House (an ending that facilitates transformation), and it is the natural representative of energetic assertive action. Mars lies in the intersection of Taurus 2nd House and PH2, both houses referring to supportive persons or things. At her best, feminine Taurus is doggedly determined to make tangible progress in achieving a better quality of life. In light of the foregoing, Mars refers to King as enthusiastically engaging in self-betterment.

As a nocturnal malefic in a diurnal chart, Mars is 'unhappy'. Therefore, Mars brings difficulties that require great effort to overcome. The 2nd House and PH2 each allow 25% house strength, and so Mars's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(25\% + 25\%) = 25\%$. Therefore, Mars takes effective action at a very slow pace or not at all.

Mars represents the native, and its house location indicates where the native gives great attention and great effort.

Planets that make major aspects with the Ascendant ruler indicate factors that affect the Ascendant ruler for good or for bad. Moon is applying to a sinister square with Mars:

Moon-Mars square: As previously found, Moon refers to King as taking on a fatherly role in order to further the common good. Moreover, as previously found, Mars refers to King as enthusiastically engaging in self-betterment. According to the principle of overcoming, Moon

dominates the aspect here. The square here indicates a call for King to bring his efforts of self-betterment into line with his efforts for the common good.

Mars is separating from an opposition with Saturn. For Saturn, we find the following:

Saturn in Sagittarius 9th House: Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 11th House (comrades and shared interests) and Capricorn 10th House (achieving something significant; head persons), and it is the natural representative of sober-minded action. Saturn lies in the intersection of Sagittarius 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how) and PH8 (an ending that facilitates transformation). At his best, masculine Sagittarius is not afraid to go beyond his comfort zone and to take risks in order to achieve worthy goals. In light of the foregoing, Saturn refers to King as achieving something significant through transformative spiritual leadership to further the common good.

As a diurnal malefic in a diurnal chart, Saturn is ‘happy’. Therefore, Saturn brings difficulties that require moderate effort to overcome. The 9th House allows 50% house strength, while PH2 allows 25% house strength, and so Saturn’s overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(50\% + 25\%) = 37.5\%$. Therefore, Saturn takes effective action at a very slow pace or not at all.

For the aspect, we find the following:

Mars-Saturn opposition: As previously found, Mars refers to King as enthusiastically engaging in self-betterment. Moreover, as previously found, Saturn refers to King as achieving something significant through transformative spiritual leadership to further the common good. The opposition aspect here indicates a call for King to harmonize his efforts of self-betterment with his efforts for the common good.

King famously spoke of the ‘beloved community’, which he viewed as an achievable society in which justice, equal opportunity, and love for all human beings prevail.

EXAMINING THE LOTS OF FORTUNE, SPIRIT, AND RETRIBUTION

In King’s natal chart, the Ascendant is at Aries $20^{\circ} 57' 33''$, Sun is at Capricorn $02^{\circ} 16' 59''$, Moon is at Aquarius $26^{\circ} 44' 06''$, and Saturn is at Sagittarius $02^{\circ} 30' 02''$. For the Lot of Fortune, we get

$$\begin{aligned} LFo &= Asc + Moon - Sun = 20^{\circ} 57' 33'' + 326^{\circ} 44' 06'' - 272^{\circ} 16' 59'' \\ &= 75^{\circ} 24' 40'' = 60^{\circ} + 15^{\circ} 24' 40'', \end{aligned}$$

which is Gemini $15^{\circ} 24' 40''$. For the Lot of Spirit, we get

$$\begin{aligned} LSp &= Asc + Sun - Moon = 20^{\circ} 57' 33'' + 272^{\circ} 16' 59'' - 326^{\circ} 44' 06'' \\ &= -33^{\circ} 29' 34'' \equiv -33^{\circ} 29' 34'' + 360^{\circ} = 326^{\circ} 30' 26'' = 300^{\circ} + 26^{\circ} 30' 26'', \end{aligned}$$

which is Aquarius $26^{\circ} 30' 26''$. For the Lot of Retribution, we get

$$\begin{aligned} LRe &= Asc + Saturn - LFo = 20^{\circ} 57' 33'' + 242^{\circ} 30' 02'' - 75^{\circ} 24' 40'' \\ &= 188^{\circ} 02' 55'' = 180^{\circ} + 08^{\circ} 02' 55'', \end{aligned}$$

which is Libra $08^{\circ} 02' 55''$.

The Lot of Fortune indicates how and where one can attract good luck to support their efforts. King's natal Lot of Fortune lies in the intersection of Gemini 3rd House and PH3, both houses referring to community. At his best, masculine Gemini seeks to learn and communicate in order to further wholesome intellectual development. Gemini is ruled by Mercury, and so Mercury is the Lot's dispositor. As previously found, Mercury refers to King as achieving something significant by being a clever, diligent advocate for his community. In light of the foregoing, King can attract good luck by being a clever, diligent advocate of that which furthers the wholesome intellectual development of his community.

The Lot of Spirit indicates how and where one can wholesomely develop their life potential. King's natal Lot of Spirit lies in the intersection of Aquarius 11th House and PH11, both houses referring to comrades and shared interests. At his best, masculine Aquarius is unselfish and makes improvements for the common good. Aquarius is ruled by Saturn, and so Saturn is the Lot's dispositor. As previously found, Saturn refers to King as achieving something significant by taking transformative spiritual action to further the common good. In light of the foregoing, King can wholesomely develop his life potential by engaging in fellowship with others who seek to further the common good.

The Lot of Retribution indicates how and where one can meet their downfall. King's natal Lot of Retribution lies in the intersection of Libra 7th House (romantic partners) and PH6 (being subject to unwholesome influences). Masculine Libra seeks to be surrounded by beauty and harmony. Libra is ruled by Venus, and so Venus is the Lot's dispositor. Venus is the natural representative of friendly action, intimate relationships, and personal charm. In light of the foregoing, the Lot of Retribution refers to King's extramarital affairs. The FBI (Federal Bureau of Investigation) used recorded material of King's romantic affairs in an orchestrated effort to ruin his reputation.

LOOKING FOR INTERESTING ASTROLOGICAL CONFIGURATIONS

Let's now look for interesting astrological configurations in King's natal chart. In this regard, Sun is making a conjunction to PC10 (the Midheaven). For Sun, we find the following:

Sun in Capricorn 10th House: Sun is the lord of Leo 5th House (personal interests), and it is the natural representative of leaders and social recognition. Sun lies in the intersection of Capricorn 10th House (achieving something significant; gaining prestige; head persons) and PH9 (spiritual or professional know-how). At her best, feminine Capricorn is diligent – she gives steady, meticulous attention to ongoing tasks. In light of the foregoing, Sun refers to King as achieving recognition through diligent leadership efforts involving spiritual know-how.

As the diurnal luminary in a diurnal chart, Sun is able to show more of what it is in an uninhibited way. The 10th House and PH10 each allow 100% house strength, and so Sun's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(100\% + 100\%) = 100\%$. Therefore, Sun takes effective action quickly.

The conjunction here refers to Sun as being helpful to PC10 (achieving something significant). As a co-founder of SCLC (Southern Christian Leadership Conference), King used the power of black churches to conduct nonviolent protests aimed at civil-rights reform.

4.3 The Profected Ascendant

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

The Latin-derived noun ‘**profection**’ means ‘a movement forward’. The **Profected Ascendant** (PR1) is the result of moving the natal Ascendant forward at a rate of 30° per year of life. More specifically, for the native at A sidereal years of age, we add

$$\text{profection addition term} = (30 \times A) \text{ deg}$$

to the ecliptic longitude of the natal Ascendant in order to get the ecliptic longitude of PR1.

FIGURE 4.3: PR1 in King’s natal chart

<K2> 09:22 (PC12) 15:45 12th PI	(PC11) 10:33 Ve 17:42 Mo 26:44 11th AQ	Su 02:16 (PC10) 05:21 Me 18:54 10th CP	Sa 02:30 (PC9) 10:33 9th SA	(PC8) 15:45 8th SC
Ju 08:19 (PC1) 20:57 1st AR	Martin Luther King Jr. Natal Chart (Sidereal Whole-Sign Houses) Tuesday, 15 JAN 1929 at 12:00 CST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 20:57 7th LI
<K1> 03:35 (PC2) 15:45 Ma 29:02 R 2nd TA	(PC3) 10:33 3rd GE	(PC4) 05:21 <K3> 27:26 4th CN	(PC5) 10:33 5th LE	(PC6) 15:45 6th VI

In order to examine the native’s life at a given time, it is useful to consider: [1] PR1 and major aspects to it, [2] planets in the house location of PR1, and [3] the PR1 ruler and its major aspects.

Firstly, PR1 refers to the native’s situation at the time of interest. Moreover, planets that make major aspects to PR1 indicate factors that further describe the native’s situation at the time of interest. Secondly, planets in the house location of PR1 further describe the native’s situation at the time of interest. Thirdly, the PR1 ruler represents the native at the time of interest, and its house location indicates where the native gives great attention and great effort. Moreover, planets that make major aspects with the PR1 ruler indicate factors that affect the PR1 ruler for good or for bad.

In this section, we will use PR1 together with hindsight in order to examine three particular events in King’s life: [1] his wedding day in 1953, [2] his DC speech in 1963, and [3] his passing in 1968.

EVENT #K1 (King's wedding day in 1953)

On Thursday, 18 June 1953, Martin Luther King Jr. married Coretta Scott, who would later become a civil-rights leader in her own right. By this date, King had lived through 6 leap days (namely, those of 1932, 1936, 1940, 1944, 1948, and 1952). It follows that on his wedding day, King's sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(6 \times 366) + (18 \times 365) + 16 + 28 + 31 + 30 + 31 + 18] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 24.42120 \text{ yrs.}$$

For $A \approx 24.42120$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{profection addition term} &= (30 \times A) \text{ deg} \approx 732.63600 \text{ deg} \approx 732^\circ 38' 10'' \\ &= 2 \times 360^\circ + 12^\circ 38' 10'' \equiv 12^\circ 38' 10''. \end{aligned}$$

The natal Ascendant is at Aries $20^\circ 57' 33''$, and so its ecliptic longitude is $20^\circ 57' 33''$. We find that the ecliptic longitude of PR1 is

$$20^\circ 57' 33'' + 12^\circ 38' 10'' = 33^\circ 35' 43'' = 30^\circ + 03^\circ 35' 43'',$$

and so the Projected Ascendant (PR1) is at Taurus $03^\circ 35' 43''$.

Firstly, let's consider PR1 and major aspects to it. PR1 refers to the native's situation at the time of interest. PR1 (denoted in FIGURE 4.3 as 'K1') lies in the intersection of Taurus 2nd House (supportive persons or things) and PH1 (the native's well-being). At her best, feminine Taurus is doggedly determined to make tangible progress in achieving a better quality of life. King's marriage was a means of support through which he could work at having a better quality of life.

Planets that make major aspects to PR1 indicate factors that further describe the native's situation at the time of interest. Sun is making a sinister trine to PR1. As previously found in Section 4.2, Sun refers to King as achieving recognition through diligent leadership efforts involving spiritual know-how. In the context of marriage, Sun refers to King as gaining prestige by being a good husband according to spiritual standards.

Secondly, let's consider planets in the house location of PR1, which further describe the native's situation at the time of interest. Mars is in Taurus 2nd House with PR1. As previously found in Section 4.2, Mars refers to King as enthusiastically engaging in self-betterment. In the context of marriage, Mars refers to King as acquiring his 'better half' (a friendly reference to the spouse with whom one shares one's life).

Thirdly, let's consider the PR1 ruler and its major aspects. The PR1 ruler represents the native at the time of interest, and its house location indicates where the native gives great attention and great effort. As previously found in Section 4.2, Venus (the PR1 ruler) refers to King as working together with others in order to further the common good. In the context of marriage, Venus refers to King as working together with his wife in order to further a wholesome marital union.

Planets that make major aspects with the PR1 ruler indicate factors that affect the PR1 ruler for good or for bad. There is nothing in this regard.

EVENT #K2 (King's DC speech in 1963)

On Wednesday, 28 August 1963, Martin Luther King Jr. delivered his famous “I Have A Dream” speech during the March on Washington for Jobs and Freedom. By this date, King had lived through 8 leap days (namely, those of 1932, 1936, 1940, 1944, 1948, 1952, 1956, and 1960). It follows that on the date of his speech, King’s sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(8 \times 366) + (26 \times 365) + 16 + 28 + 31 + 30 + 31 + 30 + 31 + 28] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \\ \approx 34.61405 \text{ yrs} .$$

For $A \approx 34.61405$, we get

$$\text{profection addition term} = (30 \times A) \text{ deg} \approx 1038.42150 \text{ deg} \approx 1038^\circ 25' 17'' \\ = 2 \times 360^\circ + 318^\circ 25' 17'' \equiv 318^\circ 25' 17'' .$$

The natal Ascendant is at Aries $20^\circ 57' 33''$, and so its ecliptic longitude is $20^\circ 57' 33''$. We find that the ecliptic longitude of PR1 is

$$20^\circ 57' 33'' + 318^\circ 25' 17'' = 339^\circ 22' 50'' = 330^\circ + 09^\circ 22' 50'' ,$$

and so the Projected Ascendant (PR1) is at Pisces $09^\circ 22' 50''$.

Firstly, let’s consider PR1 and major aspects to it. PR1 refers to the native’s situation at the time of interest. PR1 (denoted in FIGURE 4.3 as ‘K2’) lies in the intersection of Pisces 12th House (trying situations) and PH11 (comrades and shared interests). At her best, feminine Pisces is resilient and shows kindly concern for others. The core agenda of the March on Washington for Jobs and Freedom was to advocate for civil rights and economic equality for African Americans.

Planets that make major aspects to PR1 indicate factors that further describe the native’s situation at the time of interest. Saturn is making a sinister square to PR1. As previously found in Section 4.2, Saturn refers to King as achieving something significant through transformative spiritual leadership to further the common good.

Secondly, let’s consider planets in the house location of PR1, which further describe the native’s situation at the time of interest. There is nothing in this regard.

Thirdly, let’s consider the PR1 ruler and its major aspects. The PR1 ruler represents the native at the time of interest, and its house location indicates where the native gives great attention and great effort. As previously found in Section 4.2, Jupiter (the PR1 ruler) refers to King as achieving a high position by boldly dealing with trying situations through spiritual guidance.

Planets that make major aspects with the PR1 ruler indicate factors that affect the PR1 ruler for good or for bad. Sun is applying to a sinister square with Jupiter:

Sun-Jupiter square: As previously found in Section 4.2, Sun refers to King as achieving recognition through diligent leadership efforts involving spiritual know-how. Moreover, as previously found in Section 4.2, Jupiter refers to King as achieving a high position by boldly

dealing with trying situations through spiritual guidance. According to the principle of overcoming, Sun dominates the square aspect here.

Jupiter is separating from a dexter trine with Saturn:

Jupiter-Saturn trine: As previously found in Section 4.2, Jupiter refers to King as achieving a high position by boldly dealing with trying situations through spiritual guidance. As previously found in Section 4.2, Saturn refers to King as achieving something significant through transformative spiritual leadership to further the common good. According to the principle of overcoming, Saturn dominates the trine aspect here.

In his famous “I Have A Dream” speech, King addressed the issue of racial inequality in America, and he argued that racial justice is in accord with God’s will.

EVENT #K3 (King’s passing in 1968)

On Thursday, 04 April 1968, Martin Luther King Jr. was assassinated. By this date, King had lived through 10 leap days (namely, those of 1932, 1936, 1940, 1944, 1948, 1952, 1956, 1960, 1964, and 1968). It follows that on the date of his passing, King’s sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(9 \times 366) + (30 \times 365) + 16 + 29 + 31 + 4] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 39.21629 \text{ yrs.}$$

For $A \approx 39.21629$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{profection addition term} &= (30 \times A) \text{ deg} \approx 1176.48870 \text{ deg} \approx 1176^\circ 29' 19'' \\ &= 3 \times 360^\circ + 96^\circ 29' 19'' \equiv 96^\circ 29' 19''. \end{aligned}$$

The natal Ascendant is at Aries $20^\circ 57' 33''$, and so its ecliptic longitude is $20^\circ 57' 33''$. We find that the ecliptic longitude of PR1 is

$$20^\circ 57' 33'' + 96^\circ 29' 19'' = 117^\circ 26' 52'' = 90^\circ + 27^\circ 26' 52'',$$

and so the Profected Ascendant (PR1) is at Cancer $27^\circ 26' 52''$.

Firstly, let’s consider PR1 and major aspects to it. PR1 refers to the native’s situation at the time of interest. PR1 (denoted in FIGURE 4.3 as ‘K3’) lies in the intersection of Cancer 4th House and PH4, both houses referring to being gravebound.

Planets that make major aspects to PR1 indicate factors that further describe the native’s situation at the time of interest. Mars is making a sinister sextile to PR1. Mars is the lord of Aries 1st House (the native) and Scorpio 8th House (bodily death), and it is the natural representative of bodily injury. Mars lies in the intersection of Taurus 2nd House and PH2, both houses referring to supportive persons or things. In light of the foregoing, Mars refers to death as coming to that which physically supports King’s life.

Secondly, let’s consider planets in the house location of PR1, which further describe the native’s situation at the time of interest. There is nothing in this regard.

Thirdly, let's consider the PR1 ruler and its major aspects. The PR1 ruler represents the native at the time of interest, and its house location indicates where the native gives great attention and great effort. Moon (the PR1 ruler) is the lord of Cancer 4th House (being gravebound). Moon lies in the intersection of Moon lies in the intersection of Aquarius 11th House and PH11, both houses referring to being bound for bodily death. Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 11th House is the derived 8th House (bodily death). In light of the foregoing, Moon refers to King as being bound for bodily death. In Section 4.2, we found that Moon refers to King as taking on a fatherly role in order to further the common good. On putting it all together, Moon refers to King as being bound for bodily death because of his efforts to further the common good.

Planets that make major aspects with the PR1 ruler indicate factors that affect the PR1 ruler for good or bad. Moon is applying to a sinister square with Mars:

Moon-Mars square: As previously found in Section 4.2, the Moon-Mars square indicates a call for King to bring his efforts of self-betterment into line with his efforts for the common good. King answers this call despite the threat of bodily death.

King famously said: "The time is always right to do what is right.". King faced constant threats of violence that came primarily from white supremacy groups and from a covert surveillance and harassment campaign that was orchestrated by the FBI (Federal Bureau of Investigation).

4.4 Solar returns

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

The native's **solar return** is Sun's annual return to its natal position. This return occurs on or close to the native's birthday. A solar-return year spans the time interval from one solar return to the next one. In astrology, the noun '**transit**' refers to the ongoing movement of a planet across the sky. In working with transits, we look at current planetary positions. A **solar-return chart** is a transit chart that is cast for the time when a solar return occurs, and we take it to represent the entire associated solar-return year.

There is disagreement among astrologers about the location for which a return chart should be cast. Some believe that the chart should be cast for the native's location at the time of the return. Others believe that the return chart should be cast for the native's birthplace, regardless of the native's location at the time of the return. We side with the latter group.

Let SR1 denote the Ascendant of the solar-return (SR) chart. In order to examine the native's life during a solar-return year, it is useful to consider the following in both the natal and SR charts: [1] SR1 and major aspects to it, [2] planets in the house location of SR1, and [3] the SR1 ruler and its major aspects.

Firstly, SR1 refers to the native's situation in the solar-return year of interest. Moreover, planets that make major aspects to SR1 indicate factors that further describe the native's situation in the solar-return year of interest. Secondly, planets in the house location of SR1 further describe the native's situation in the solar-return year of interest. Thirdly, the SR1 ruler represents the native

in the solar-return year of interest, and its house location indicates where the native gives great attention and great effort. Moreover, planets that make major aspects with the SR1 ruler indicate factors that affect the SR1 ruler for good or for bad.

FIGURE 4.4a: SR1 in King's natal chart

(PC12) 15:45 12th PI	(PC11) 10:33 Ve 17:42 Mo 26:44 11th AQ	Su 02:16 (PC10) 05:21 Me 18:54 10th CP	Sa 02:30 (PC9) 10:33 <K2> 11:07 9th SA	(PC8) 15:45 8th SC
Ju 08:19 (PC1) 20:57 <K3> 21:16 1st AR	Martin Luther King Jr. Natal Chart (Sidereal Whole-Sign Houses) Tuesday, 15 JAN 1929 at 12:00 CST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 20:57 7th LI
(PC2) 15:45 Ma 29:02 R 2nd TA	(PC3) 10:33 <K1> 16:51 3rd GE	(PC4) 05:21 4th CN	(PC5) 10:33 5th LE	(PC6) 15:45 6th VI

In this section, we will use SR1 together with hindsight in order to examine three particular events in King's life: [1] his wedding day in 1953, [2] his DC speech in 1963, and [3] his passing in 1968.

EVENT #K1 (King's wedding day in 1953)

On Thursday, 15 January 1953, King reached age 24. In order to find the time of the SR chart, we will make use of tropical ecliptic longitudes as a means to an end. At King's birth time, Sun's sidereal ecliptic longitude is 272° 16' 59". At King's 1953 SR time, Sun's sidereal ecliptic longitude is the natal value of 272° 16' 59", and the *ayanāṃśa* is 23° 11' 10" according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. On adding this *ayanāṃśa* to Sun's sidereal ecliptic longitude, we get the SR tropical value of 295° 28' 09". We find that Sun's tropical ecliptic longitude is 295° 28' 09" on Thursday, 15 January 1953 at 04:35:00 pm, EST. FIGURE 4.4b presents King's 1953 SR chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The SR Ascendant (SR1) is at Gemini 16° 51' 41".

On Thursday, 18 June 1953, Martin Luther King Jr. married Coretta Scott, who would later become a civil-rights leader in her own right. Let's see how this event shows up astrologically in the natal and SR charts.

Let's examine the natal chart. In FIGURE 4.4a, SR1 (denoted there as 'K1') lies in the intersection of Gemini 3rd House and PH3, both houses referring to relatives. The Latin name for Gemini means 'twins'. In the context of marriage, SR1 refers to Martin and Coretta as becoming

relatives by marriage. Venus is making a sinister trine to SR1. As previously found for Event #K1 in Section 4.3, natal Venus refers to King as working together with his wife in order to further a wholesome marital union.

Mercury (the SR1 ruler) is the lord of Gemini 3rd House (relatives) and Virgo 6th House (being of service to others), and it is the natural representative of clever action. Mercury lies in the intersection of Capricorn 10th House and PH10, both houses referring to achieving something significant and to head persons. In the context of marriage, natal Mercury refers to King as using his wits to be a good servant leader.

FIGURE 4.4b: King's 1953 SR chart

(PC12) 11:28 12th TA	(PC11) 06:05 Ju 17:58 11th AR	(PC10) 00:42 10th PI	(PC9) 06:05 Ve 18:29 Ma 19:07 9th AQ	Su 02:16 Mo 06:35 (PC8) 11:28 8th CP
(SR1) 16:51 1st GE	Martin Luther King Jr. Solar-Return Chart for Age 24 (Sidereal) Thursday, 15 JAN 1953 at 16:35:00 EST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 16:51 Me 20:58 7th SA
(PC2) 11:28 2nd CN	(PC3) 06:05 3rd LE	(PC4) 00:42 4th VI	Sa 03:45 (PC5) 06:05 5th LI	(PC6) 11:28 6th SC

Let's examine the SR chart. In FIGURE 4.4b, Jupiter is making a sinister sextile to SR1. Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 10th House (achieving something significant; gaining prestige) and Sagittarius 7th House (marriage), and it is the natural representative of noble-minded action, high social position, and religion/spirituality. Jupiter lies in the intersection of Aries 11th House and PH11, both houses referring to comrades and shared interests. In the context of marriage, SR Jupiter refers to King's marital union as holy matrimony (that is, a marital union that is blessed by God).

Mercury (the SR1 ruler) is the lord of Gemini 1st House (the native's well-being) and Virgo 4th House (comfort and security), and it is the natural representative of clever action. Mercury lies in the intersection of Sagittarius 7th House and PH7, both houses referring to marriage. Mercury is making a conjunction to PC7 (marriage). In the context of marriage, SR Mercury refers to King's marriage as requiring clever action in order to bring comfort and security.

Mercury is separating from a sinister sextile with Venus. According to the principle of overcoming, Mercury dominates this sextile aspect. Venus is the lord of Libra 5th House (personal interests) and Taurus 12th House (trying situations), and it is the natural representative of friendly

action and intimate relationships. Venus lies in the intersection of Aquarius 9th House and PH9, both houses referring to spiritual or professional know-how. In the context of marriage, SR Venus refers to King's marital union as a trying situation that requires spiritual guidance.

EVENT #K2 (King's DC speech in 1963)

On Tuesday, 15 January 1963, King reached age 34. In order to find the time of the SR chart, we will make use of tropical ecliptic longitudes as a means to an end. At King's birth time, Sun's sidereal ecliptic longitude is $272^{\circ} 16' 59''$. At King's 1968 SR time, Sun's sidereal ecliptic longitude is the natal value of $272^{\circ} 16' 59''$, and the *ayanāṃśa* is $23^{\circ} 19' 33''$ according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. On adding this *ayanāṃśa* to Sun's sidereal ecliptic longitude, we get the SR tropical value of $295^{\circ} 36' 32''$. We find that Sun's tropical ecliptic longitude is $295^{\circ} 36' 31''$ on Wednesday, 16 January 1963 at 06:23:40 am, EST. FIGURE 4.4c presents King's 1963 SR chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The SR Ascendant (SR1) is at Sagittarius $11^{\circ} 12' 04''$.

FIGURE 4.4c: King's 1963 SR chart

Ve 15:37 (PC12) 17:30 12th SC	(PC10) 00:08 (PC11) 23:49 11th LI	Mo 17:16 10th VI	(PC9) 23:49 9th LE	(PC8) 17:30 Ma 28:28 R 8th CN
(SR1) 11:12 1st SA	Martin Luther King Jr. Solar-Return Chart for Age 34 (Sidereal) Wednesday, 16 JAN 1963 at 06:23:40 EST Atlanta, GA ($33^{\circ} 45' N$; $84^{\circ} 23' W$)			(PC7) 11:12 7th GE
Su 02:16 Me 10:58 R (PC2) 17:30 Sa 18:21 2nd CP	Ju 18:37 (PC3) 23:49 3rd AQ	4th PI	(PC4) 00:08 (PC5) 23:49 5th AR	(PC6) 17:30 6th TA

On Wednesday, 28 August 1963, Martin Luther King Jr. delivered his famous "I Have A Dream" speech during the March on Washington for Jobs and Freedom. In his speech, King addressed the issue of racial inequality in America, and he argued that racial justice is in accord with God's will. Let's see how this event shows up astrologically in the natal and SR charts.

Let's examine the natal chart. In FIGURE 4.4a, SR1 (denoted there as 'K2') lies in the intersection of Sagittarius 9th House and PH9, both houses referring to spiritual or professional know-how. At his best, masculine Sagittarius is not afraid to go beyond his comfort zone and to take risks in order to achieve worthy goals. In the context of King's DC speech, SR1 refers to King as taking spiritual action in order to eliminate racial inequality in America.

Venus is making a dexter sextile to SR1. As previously found in Section 4.2, natal Venus refers to King as working together with others in order to further the common good. Jupiter (the SR1 ruler) is making a dexter trine to SR1. As previously found in Section 4.2, natal Jupiter refers to King as achieving a high position by boldly dealing with trying situations through spiritual guidance.

Saturn is in Sagittarius 9th House with SR1, and it is applying to a sinister trine with Jupiter. According to the principle of overcoming, Saturn dominates this trine aspect. As previously found in Section 4.2, natal Saturn refers to King as achieving something significant through transformative spiritual leadership to further the common good.

Sun is applying to a sinister square with Jupiter. According to the principle of overcoming, Sun dominates this square aspect. As previously found in Section 4.2, natal Sun refers to King as achieving recognition through diligent leadership efforts involving spiritual know-how.

Let's examine the SR chart. In FIGURE 4.4c, Moon is making a sinister square to SR1. Moon is the lord of Cancer 8th House (an ending that facilitates transformation), and it is the natural representative of stages of change. Moon lies in the intersection of Virgo 10th House (achieving something significant) and PH9 (spiritual or professional know-how). In the context of King's DC speech, SR Moon refers to King as taking transformative spiritual action.

Jupiter (the SR1 ruler) is the lord of Sagittarius 1st House (the native) and Pisces 4th House (comfort and security), and it is the natural representative of noble-minded action, high social position, and religion/spirituality. In the context of King's DC speech, SR Jupiter refers to King as taking spiritual action in order to bring comfort and security.

Venus is applying to a sinister square with Jupiter. According to the principle of overcoming, Venus dominates this square aspect. Venus is the lord of Libra 11th House (comrades and shared interests) and Taurus 6th House (being of service to others), and it is the natural representative of friendly action and intimate relationships. Venus lies in the intersection of Scorpio 12th House (trying situations) and PH11 (comrades and shared interests). In the context of King's DC speech, SR Venus refers to King as working together with others in order to further the common good under trying circumstances.

EVENT #K3 (King's passing in 1968)

On Monday, 15 January 1968, King reached age 39. In order to find the time of the SR chart, we will make use of tropical ecliptic longitudes as a means to an end. At King's birth time, Sun's sidereal ecliptic longitude is $272^{\circ} 16' 59''$. At King's 1968 SR time, Sun's sidereal ecliptic longitude is the natal value of $272^{\circ} 16' 59''$, and the *ayanāṃśa* is $23^{\circ} 23' 44''$ according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. On adding this *ayanāṃśa* to Sun's sidereal ecliptic longitude, we get the SR tropical value of $295^{\circ} 40' 43''$. We find that Sun's tropical ecliptic longitude is $295^{\circ} 40' 43''$ on Tuesday, 16 January 1968 at 01:00:30 pm, EST. FIGURE 4.4d presents King's 1968 SR chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The SR Ascendant (SR1) is at Aries $21^{\circ} 16' 46''$.

FIGURE 4.4d: King's 1968 SR chart

(PC12) 16:00 Sa 13:33 12th PI	(PC11) 10:43 Ma 12:19 11th AQ	Su 02:16 (PC10) 05:27 Me 14:02 10th CP	(PC9) 10:43 9th SA	(PC8) 16:00 Ve 24:27 8th SC
(SR1) 21:16 1st AR	Martin Luther King Jr. Solar-Return Chart for Age 39 (Sidereal) Tuesday, 16 JAN 1968 at 13:00:30 EST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 21:16 7th LI
(PC2) 16:00 2nd TA	(PC3) 10:43 3rd GE	(PC4) 05:27 Mo 15:18 4th CN	(PC5) 10:43 Ju 11:25 R 5th LE	(PC6) 16:00 6th VI

On Thursday, 04 April 1968, Martin Luther King Jr. was assassinated. Let's see how this event shows up astrologically in the natal and SR charts.

Let's examine the natal chart. In FIGURE 4.4a, SR1 (denoted there as 'K3') lies in the intersection of Aries 1st House and PH1, both houses referring to bodily life or bodily health. In the context of King's assassination, SR1 refers to concerns about King's bodily life or bodily health. Moon is making a sinister sextile to SR1. As previously found for Event #K3 in Section 4.3, natal Moon refers to King as being bound for bodily death because of his efforts to further the common good.

Jupiter is in Aries 1st House with SR1. Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 12th House (hidden enemies) and Sagittarius 9th House (being subject to deadly influences), and it is the natural representative of high social position. Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 9th House is the derived 6th House (being subject to unwholesome influences). Jupiter lies in the intersection of Aries 1st House (the native's well-being) and PH12 (hidden enemies). In the context of King's assassination, natal Jupiter refers to King's bodily death as being related to enemies in high places.

As previously found for Event #K3 in Section 4.3, natal Mars (the SR1 ruler) refers to death as coming to that which physically supports King's life. Moon is applying to a sinister square with Mars.

Let's examine the SR chart. In FIGURE 4.4d, Moon is making a dexter square to SR1. Moon is the lord of Cancer 4th House (being gravebound), and it is the natural representative of stages of change. Moon lies in the intersection of Cancer 4th House and PH4, both houses referring to being gravebound. In the context of King's assassination, SR Moon refers to King as being gravebound.

Mars (the SR1 ruler) is the lord of Aries 1st House (the native) and Scorpio 8th House (bodily death), and it is the natural representative of bodily injury. Mars lies in the intersection of Aquarius 11th House and PH11, both houses referring to being bound for bodily death. Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 11th House is the derived 8th House (bodily death). In the context of King's assassination, SR Mars refers to King as being bound for bodily death.

4.5 Guessing a birth time

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

On Wednesday, 16 July 1862, Ida Bell Wells was the first child born to James Madison Wells and his wife Elizabeth Wells in Holly Springs, Mississippi. At the time of Ida's birth, the Wells family was considered to be the enslaved property of architect Spires Boling. Slavery was legally abolished on Wednesday, 06 December 1865 with the ratification of the 13th Amendment to the United States Constitution. During the subsequent Reconstruction period, Ida's parents became very active in the African American community.

The late Ida B. Wells was a civil-rights leader and investigative journalist who campaigned against racial injustice in America. Wells famously said: "The way to right wrongs is to turn the light of truth upon them." Moreover, she famously said: "Somebody must show that the Afro-American race is more sinned against than sinning, and it seems to have fallen upon me to do so."

The birth time of Ida B. Wells is generally unknown. In this section, we will use the Protected Ascendant (PR1) to get a ballpark estimate of Wells's birth time. Firstly, we will examine PR1 for each of four particular events in Wells's life: [1] the passing of her parents in 1878, [2] her publication of *Southern Horrors* in 1892, [3] her wedding day in 1895, and [4] her passing in 1931. Secondly, we will look for a trial natal chart that makes sense with regard to our four chosen events.

EVENT #W1 (the passing of Wells's parents in 1878)

Wells's parents passed away during the yellow fever epidemic of 1878. Her father passed away on Thursday, 26 September, and her mother passed away on Friday, 27 September. Around this time, one of Wells's brothers also passed away from the epidemic. By this time, Wells had lived through 4 leap days (namely, those of 1864, 1868, 1872, and 1876). It follows that on the date of her mother's passing, Wells's sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(4 \times 366) + (12 \times 365) + 15 + 31 + 27] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 16.19958 \text{ yrs}.$$

For $A \approx 16.19958$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{profection addition term} &= (30 \times A) \text{ deg} \approx 485.98740 \text{ deg} \approx 485^\circ 59' 15'' \\ &= 360^\circ + 125^\circ 59' 15'' \equiv 125^\circ 59' 15'' = 4 \times 30^\circ + 05^\circ 59' 15'', \end{aligned}$$

and so PR1 is the result of moving the natal Ascendant forward by at least 4 signs (and therefore 4 houses).

If the sign degree of the natal Ascendant is less than $24^{\circ} 00' 45''$, then PR1 will lie 4 houses ahead, that is, in the 5th House. If the sign degree of the natal Ascendant is greater than $24^{\circ} 00' 45''$, then PR1 will lie 5 houses ahead, that is, in the 6th House. If PR1 lies in the 6th House, then its sign degree cannot exceed $05^{\circ} 59' 15''$.

The 5th House refers to children. The 6th House refers to stress. After Ida's parents passed away, friends and relatives considered separating the surviving Wells children and sending them to foster homes. Ida resisted this proposition and arranged for herself to become the primary caretaker of her siblings in order to keep them together. In this regard, Ida's younger siblings became her 'children'.

EVENT #W2 (Wells's publication of *Southern Horrors* in 1892)

On Wednesday, 26 October 1892, Ida B. Wells began publishing her research on the lynching of African Americans in a pamphlet titled *Southern Horrors: Lynch Law in All Its Phases*. By this date, Wells had lived through 8 leap days (namely, those of 1864, 1868, 1872, 1876, 1880, 1884, 1888, and 1892). It follows that on the date of his mother's passing, Wells's sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(8 \times 366) + (22 \times 365) + 15 + 31 + 30 + 26] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 30.28010 \text{ yrs}.$$

For $A \approx 30.28010$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{profection addition term} &= (30 \times A) \text{ deg} \approx 908.40300 \text{ deg} \approx 908^{\circ} 24' 11'' \\ &= 2 \times 360^{\circ} + 188^{\circ} 24' 11'' \equiv 188^{\circ} 24' 11'' = 6 \times 30^{\circ} + 08^{\circ} 24' 11'', \end{aligned}$$

and so PR1 is the result of moving the natal Ascendant forward by at least 6 signs (and therefore 6 houses).

If the sign degree of the natal Ascendant is less than $21^{\circ} 35' 49''$, then PR1 will lie 6 houses ahead, that is, in the 7th House. If the sign degree of the natal Ascendant is greater than $21^{\circ} 35' 49''$, then PR1 will lie 7 houses ahead, that is, in the 8th House. If PR1 lies in the 8th House, then its sign degree cannot exceed $08^{\circ} 24' 11''$.

The 7th House refers to partnerships and divine cooperation. The 8th House refers to an ending that facilitates transformation and to dealing with another's passing. The subject of *Southern Horrors* was the lynching of African Americans, and Wells said that she wrote it in order "to arouse the conscience of America".

EVENT #W3 (Wells's wedding day in 1895)

On Thursday, 27 June 1895, Ida Bell Wells married Ferdinand Lee Barnett, who was a prominent attorney, civil-rights activist, and journalist. By this date, Wells had lived through 8 leap days (namely, those of 1864, 1868, 1872, 1876, 1880, 1884, 1888, and 1892). It follows that on her wedding day, Wells's sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(8 \times 366) + (25 \times 365) - 16 - 3] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 32.94672 \text{ yrs} .$$

For $A \approx 32.94672$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{profection addition term} &= (30 \times A) \text{ deg} \approx 988.40160 \text{ deg} \approx 988^\circ 24' 06'' \\ &= 2 \times 360^\circ + 268^\circ 24' 06'' \equiv 268^\circ 24' 06'' = 8 \times 30^\circ + 28^\circ 24' 06'' , \end{aligned}$$

and so PR1 is the result of moving the natal Ascendant forward by at least 8 signs (and therefore 8 houses).

If the sign degree of the natal Ascendant is less than $01^\circ 35' 54''$, then PR1 will lie 8 houses ahead, that is, in the 9th House. If the sign degree of the natal Ascendant is greater than $01^\circ 35' 54''$, then PR1 will lie 9 houses ahead, that is, in the 10th House. If PR1 lies in the 10th House, then its sign degree cannot exceed $28^\circ 24' 06''$.

The 9th House refers to spiritual or professional know-how. The 10th House refers to one's calling or career and to achieving something significant. Ida's husband Ferdinand supported her career at a time when a married woman was expected to give up working outside the home. Both Ida and Ferdinand were journalists as well as civil-rights activists, and their careers were intertwined. It was important to Ida to balance her family life and her activism.

EVENT #W4 (Wells's passing in 1931)

On Thursday, 25 March 1931, Ida B. Wells-Barnett passed away from kidney disease. By this date, Wells had lived through 16 leap days (namely, those of 1864, 1868, 1872, 1876, 1880, 1884, 1888, 1892, 1896, 1904, 1908, 1912, 1916, 1920, 1924, and 1928). It follows that on the day of her passing, Wells's sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(16 \times 366) + (53 \times 365) - 16 - 30 - 31 - 30 - 6] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 68.68600 \text{ yrs} .$$

For $A \approx 68.68600$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{profection addition term} &= (30 \times A) \text{ deg} \approx 2060.58000 \text{ deg} = 2060^\circ 34' 48'' \\ &= 5 \times 360^\circ + 260^\circ 34' 48'' \equiv 260^\circ 34' 48'' = 8 \times 30^\circ + 20^\circ 34' 48'' , \end{aligned}$$

and so PR1 is the result of moving the natal Ascendant forward by at least 8 signs (and therefore 8 houses).

If the sign degree of the natal Ascendant is less than $09^\circ 25' 12''$, then PR1 will lie 8 houses ahead, that is, in the 9th House. If the sign degree of the natal Ascendant is greater than $09^\circ 25' 12''$, then PR1 will lie 9 houses ahead, that is, in the 10th House. If PR1 lies in the 10th House, then its sign degree cannot exceed $20^\circ 34' 48''$.

With respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 9th House is the derived 6th House (acute illness), and the 10th House is the derived 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm).

LOOKING FOR A TRIAL NATAL CHART

Event #W1 refers to the passing of Wells's parents and of one of her brothers. Let's use this event to help us to generate a trial natal chart. The 11th House refers to a parent passing away because it is the derived 8th House (bodily death) with respect to the 4th House (the parents). In order for PR1 to refer to the passing of Wells's parents, it makes sense for: [1] PR1 to be in the domicile of the 11th-House lord, [2] PR1 to be in the same house as the 11th-House lord, or [3] the 11th-House lord to be making a major aspect to PR1. The 10th House refers to a sibling passing away because it is the derived 8th House (bodily death) with respect to the 3rd House (siblings). In order for PR1 to refer to the passing of one of Wells's brothers, it makes sense for: [1] PR1 to be in the domicile of the 10th-House lord, [2] PR1 to be in the same house as the 10th-House lord, or [3] the 10th-House lord to be making a major aspect to PR1.

On supposing that the 11th-House lord is the same as the 10th-House lord, we get the 10th House being tied to Capricorn, the 11th House being tied to Aquarius, and the Ascendant being in Aries. By trial and error, we find that an Aries Ascendant occurs between 12:00 am, LMT and about 12:49 am, LMT. Local Mean Time (LMT) is a longitude-dependent time scale that is based on the notion of a mean solar day (which is exactly 24 hours long by definition). LMT was the civil standard for timekeeping in the 19th century before time zones were introduced in the late 19th century.

FIGURE 4.5: Wells's trial natal chart

Mo 02:54 Ma 13:31 (PC12) 16:48 12th PI	(PC11) 11:26 11th AQ	(PC10) 06:04 <W4> 12:30 <W3> 20:34 10th CP	(PC9) 11:26 9th SA	<W2> 00:34 (PC8) 16:48 8th SC
(PC1) 22:10 1st AR	Ida Bell Wells Natal Chart (Sidereal Whole-Sign Houses) Wednesday, 16 JUL 1862 at 00:25:00 LMT Holly Springs, MS (34° 46' N; 89° 27' W)			(PC7) 22:10 7th LI
(PC2) 16:48 Ve 25:09 2nd TA	(PC3) 11:26 Me 15:14 3rd GE	Su 01:28 (PC4) 06:04 4th CN	(PC5) 11:26 Sa 26:42 <W1> 28:09 5th LE	Ju 00:51 (PC6) 16:48 6th VI

Let's choose the sign degree of the natal Ascendant to be less than 24° 00' 45" so that PR1 will be in the 5th House for Event #W1. Consequently, a suitable Aries Ascendant occurs before about 12:30 am, LMT. Moreover, let's choose the sign degree of the natal Ascendant to be greater than 21° 35' 49" so that PR1 will be in the 8th House for Event #W2. Consequently, a suitable Aries Ascendant occurs after about 12:24 am, LMT.

FIGURE 4.5 presents our trial natal chart for Ida Bell Wells. Here we are taking the estimated birth time to be Wednesday, 16 July 1862 at 12:25:00 am, LMT. The *ayanāṃśa* here is 21° 55' 24" according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. The Ascendant is at Aries 22° 10' 12".

Event #W1 refers to the passings of Wells's parents and of one of her brothers. For this event, PR1 (denoted in FIGURE 4.5 as 'W1') is at 28° 09' 27". PR1 lies in the intersection of Leo 5th House (children) and PH5, both houses referring to children. At his best, masculine Leo acts nobly and safeguards those for whom he is responsible. Saturn is making a conjunction to PR1. Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 11th House (a parent passing away) and Capricorn 10th House (a sibling passing away), and it is the natural representative of death. Sun (the PR1 ruler) is the natural representative of leaders and bosses, and it is located in Cancer 4th House (parents). After her parents passed away, Wells stepped up to become the mother figure for her younger siblings.

Event #W2 refers to Wells's publishing of the pamphlet *Southern Horrors*. For this event, PR1 (denoted in FIGURE 4.5 as 'W2') is at Scorpio 00° 34' 23". PR1 lies in the intersection of Scorpio 8th House (an ending that facilitates transformation; dealing with another's passing) and PH7 (someone else). At her best, feminine Scorpio is driven by a deep sense of purpose, and she is not easily deterred by obstacles or setbacks. Jupiter is making a sinister sextile to PR1. Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 12th House (trying situations) and Sagittarius 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how). As a journalist and civil-rights activist, Wells campaigned strongly against the lynching of African Americans.

Event #W3 refers to Wells's wedding. For this event, PR1 (denoted in FIGURE 4.5 as 'W3') is at Capricorn 20° 34' 18". PR1 lies in the intersection of Capricorn 10th House and PH10, both houses referring to one's calling or career and to achieving something significant. Venus is making a dexter trine to PR1. Venus is the lord of Libra 7th House (marriage) and Taurus 2nd House (supportive persons or things), and it is the natural representative of friendly action and intimate relation. Ida and her husband Ferdinand enjoyed a happy marriage as well as a career partnership of ideas and actions.

Event #W4 refers to Wells's passing. For this event, PR1 (denoted in FIGURE 4.5 as 'W4') is at Capricorn 12° 30' 12". PR1 lies in the intersection of Capricorn 10th House and PH10, both houses referring to being bound for bodily death. Mars is making a dexter sextile to PR1. Mars is the lord of Aries 1st House (the native) and Scorpio 8th House (bodily death), and it is the natural representative of bodily injury. Ida B. Wells-Barnett passed away from kidney disease.

IMPORTANT COMMENTS: Our ballpark estimate of Wells's birth time is Wednesday, 16 July 1862 at 12:25:00 am, LMT. This estimate is not conclusive. I am inclined here to mention the following astrological rule:

The Rule of Three: If something is indicated once, then the outcome is possible. If it is indicated twice, then the outcome is likely. If it is indicated three times, then the outcome is certain.

In this regard, I would use various pertinent astrological techniques to test our trial natal chart.

4.6 Frankland's cusp-derived points

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

In his book *Secrets of Predictive Astrology*, astrologer Anthony Louis speaks extensively about the work of William Frankland, who was a London-based astrologer who published two books in the late 1920s that introduced new techniques of predictive astrology.

In his 1928 book *New Measures in Astrology*, Frankland presents a technique involving the use of Placidus house cusps to generate sensitive points that carry house meaning. Like the Porphyry house system that we have been using in our book, the Placidus house system is a quadrant-house system. In order to generate Frankland's cusp-derived points, we will be using Porphyry house cusps instead of Placidus house cusps.

Here are three ways to generate Frankland's cusp-derived points:

- In order to examine Porphyry House n when the native has A sidereal years of age, do the following. Add the ecliptic longitudes of PC1 (the Ascendant) and PC n , and then add on A degrees. We may take PC1 here to mean 'regarding the native'.
- In order to examine Porphyry House n when the native has A sidereal years of age, do the following. Add the ecliptic longitudes of PC4 (the Imum Coeli) and PC n , and then add on A degrees. We may take PC4 here to mean 'being rooted in'.
- In order to examine the combination of Porphyry Houses n_1 and n_2 when the native has A sidereal years of age, do the following. Add the ecliptic longitudes of PC n_1 and PC n_2 , and then add on A degrees.

In applying any of these ways, we may go further by adding on the ecliptic longitude of a pertinent planet.

In order to examine a cusp-derived point, it is useful to consider: [1] its house location, [2] major aspects to it, and [3] planets in its house location.

In this section, we will use cusp-derived points together with hindsight in order to examine four particular events in my life: [1] my father's passing in 1986, [2] my graduation in 1987, [3] my spiritual initiation in 1997, and [4] my mother's passing in 2012.

For the two passings, we will use Frankland's **Point of Dangerous Illness** (PDI). Frankland used PC6 (acute illness) and PC8 (bodily death) to generate PDI, which is a point that refers to the native's dangerous illness. But in each of the two passings, the dangerous illness refers to a parent, not to me (the native). Therefore, let's adapt PDI to a parent's dangerous illness. With respect to the 4th House (parents), the 9th House is the derived 6th House (acute illness), and the 11th House is the derived 8th House (bodily death). In this regard, we may use PC9 and PC11 to generate a point referring to a parent's dangerous illness.

For the other two events, we will use Frankland's **Point of Honor and Upliftment** (PHU). Frankland used PC1 (the native), PC10 (achieving something significant; gaining prestige), and

Jupiter (noble-minded action; high social position) to generate PHU, which is a point that refers to honor and upliftment to the highest point.

FIGURE 4.6: Cusp-derived points in my natal chart

<B2> 20:18 12th TA	Ma 13:57 (PC12) 28:09 11th AR	<B4> 07:21 (PC11) 19:54 10th PI	<B1> 11:18 (PC10) 11:40 Su 24:08 9th AQ	Ve 11:15 (PC9) 19:54 Me 26:49 8th CP
<B3> 00:16 (PC1) 06:24 Ju 26:46 R (PC2) 28:09 1st GE	Aakhut Em Bak Natal Chart (Sidereal Whole-Sign Houses) Tuesday, 08 MAR 1955 at 11:15 CST Chicago, IL (41° 51' N; 87° 39' W)			(PC7) 06:24 (PC8) 28:09 7th SA
(PC3) 19:54 2nd CN	(PC4) 11:40 Mo 24:55 3rd LE	(PC5) 19:54 4th VI	Sa 27:54 R (PC6) 28:09 5th LI	6th SC

EVENT #B1 (my father's passing in 1986)

On Wednesday, 03 September 1986, my father passed away from illness. By this date, I had lived through 8 leap days (namely, those of 1956, 1960, 1964, 1968, 1972, 1976, 1980, and 1984). It follows that on the date of my father's passing, my sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(8 \times 366) + (23 \times 365) + 23 + 30 + 31 + 30 + 31 + 31 + 3] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 31.49021 \text{ yrs}.$$

We may use PC9 and PC11 to generate a point that refers to a parent's dangerous illness. Let's use the Point of Dangerous Illness (PDI) for Event #B1.

PC9 is at Capricorn 19° 54' 47", and so its ecliptic longitude is 289° 54' 47". PC11 is at Pisces 19° 54' 47", and so its ecliptic longitude is 349° 54' 47". For $A \approx 31.49021$, we find that

$$A \text{ deg} \approx 31.49021 \text{ deg} \approx 31^\circ 29' 24''.$$

The ecliptic longitude of PDI is

$$\begin{aligned} 289^\circ 54' 47'' + 349^\circ 54' 47'' + 31^\circ 29' 24'' &= 671^\circ 18' 58'' = 360^\circ + 311^\circ 18' 58'' \\ &\equiv 311^\circ 18' 58'' = 300^\circ + 11^\circ 18' 58'', \end{aligned}$$

which is Aquarius 11° 18' 58".

PDI (denoted in FIGURE 4.6 as ‘B1’) lies in the intersection of Aquarius 9th House and PH9, both houses referring to a parent’s illness. Note that with respect to the 4th House (parents), the 9th House is the derived 6th House (acute illness). Mars is making a dexter sextile to PDI. Mars is the lord of Aries 11th House (a parent’s bodily death) and Scorpio 6th House (stress), and it is the natural representative of bodily injury. In light of the foregoing, Mars refers to me as undergoing stress because of my father’s passing.

Sun is in Aquarius 9th House with PDI. Sun is the lord of Leo 3rd House (relatives), and it is the natural representative of fathers. Sun lies in the intersection of Aquarius 9th House (a parent’s illness) and PH10 (a parent’s bodily death or bodily harm). Note that with respect to the 4th House (parents), the 9th House is the derived 6th House (acute illness), and the 10th House is the derived 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm). In light of the foregoing, Sun refers to a parent passing away because of illness.

Saturn (PDI’s dispositor) is the lord of Aquarius 9th House (a parent’s illness) and Capricorn 8th House (a parent’s overdoing of pleasure), and it is the natural representative of death. Note that with respect to the 4th House (parents), the 8th House is the derived 5th House (overdoing pleasure), and the 9th House is the derived 6th House (acute illness). Saturn lies in the intersection of Libra 5th House and PH5, both houses referring to supportive factors to parents. Note that with respect to the 4th House (parents), the 5th House is the derived 2nd House (supportive persons or things). In light of the foregoing, Saturn refers to a parent passing away from illness caused by abusing food or drink.

EVENT #B2 (my graduation in 1987)

On Monday, 01 June 1987, I graduated from MIT (Massachusetts Institute of Technology) with a doctoral degree in Physics. By this date, I had lived through 8 leap days (namely, those of 1956, 1960, 1964, 1968, 1972, 1976, 1980, and 1984). It follows that on the date of my graduation, my sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(8 \times 366) + (24 \times 365) + 23 + 30 + 31 + 1] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 32.23216 \text{ yrs} .$$

Frankland used PC1, PC10, and Jupiter to generate a point that refers to honor and upliftment to the highest point. Let’s use the Point of Honor and Upliftment (PHU) for Event #B2.

PC1 is at Gemini 06° 24’ 11”, and so its ecliptic longitude is 66° 24’ 11”. PC10 is at Aquarius 11° 40’ 06”, and so its ecliptic longitude is 311° 40’ 06”. For $A \approx 32.23216$, we find that

$$A \text{ deg} \approx 32.23216 \text{ deg} \approx 32^\circ 13' 55'' .$$

The ecliptic longitude of PHU is

$$\begin{aligned} 66^\circ 24' 11'' + 311^\circ 40' 06'' + 32^\circ 13' 55'' &= 410^\circ 18' 12'' = 360^\circ + 50^\circ 18' 12'' \\ &\equiv 50^\circ 18' 12'' = 30^\circ + 20^\circ 18' 12'' , \end{aligned}$$

which is Taurus 20° 18’ 12”.

PHU (denoted in FIGURE 4.6 as ‘B2’) lies in the intersection of Taurus 12th House and PH12, both houses referring to trying situations. Moon is making a dexter square to PHU. Moon is the lord of Cancer 2nd House (supportive persons or things), and it is the natural representative of nurturing. Moon lies in the intersection of Leo 3rd House (community) and PH4 (upbringing). In light of the foregoing, Moon refers to me as being developed to become an accepted member of a community. In the context of my graduation, the community is of a professional nature.

Sun is making a sinister square to PHU. Sun is the lord of Leo 3rd House (community), and it is the natural representative of leaders and social recognition. Sun lies in the intersection of Aquarius 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how) and PH10 (achieving something significant; gaining prestige). In light of the foregoing, Sun refers to me as achieving recognition through applying spiritual or professional know-how for the common good.

Mercury is making a sinister trine to PHU. Mercury is the lord of Gemini 1st House (the native) and Virgo 4th House (upbringing), and it is the natural representative of clever action, speech, and expertise. Mercury lies in the intersection of Capricorn 8th House (an ending that facilitates transformation) and PH9 (spiritual or professional know-how). In light of the foregoing, Mercury refers to me as diligently applying know-how that involves clever action, speech, and spiritual or professional expertise.

Venus (PHU’s dispositor) is the lord of Libra 5th House (personal interests) and Taurus 12th House (trying situations), and it is the natural representative of friendly action and intimate relationships. Venus lies in the intersection of Capricorn 8th House and PH8, both houses referring to an ending that facilitates transformation. In light of the foregoing, Venus refers to me as undertaking a trying, transformative endeavor.

EVENT #B3 (my spiritual initiation in 1997)

In May of 1997, I went to Nigeria in order to get initiated into *Ifá*, which is a traditional African system of spiritual cultivation. The prominent day of the initiation period was Thursday, 22 May 1997. By this date, I had lived through 11 leap days (namely, those of 1956, 1960, 1964, 1968, 1972, 1976, 1980, 1984, 1988, 1992, and 1996). It follows that during my initiation period, my sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(11 \times 366) + (31 \times 365) + 23 + 30 + 22] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 42.20597 \text{ yrs}.$$

Frankland used PC1, PC10, and Jupiter to generate a point that refers to honor and upliftment to the highest point. Let’s use the Point of Honor and Upliftment (PHU) for Event #B3.

PC1 is at Gemini $06^{\circ} 24' 11''$, and so its ecliptic longitude is $66^{\circ} 24' 11''$. PC10 is at Aquarius $11^{\circ} 40' 06'''$, and so its ecliptic longitude is $311^{\circ} 40' 06''$. For $A \approx 42.20597$, we find that

$$A \text{ deg} \approx 42.20597 \text{ deg} \approx 42^{\circ} 12' 21''.$$

The ecliptic longitude of PHU is

$$\begin{aligned} 66^{\circ} 24' 11'' + 311^{\circ} 40' 06'' + 42^{\circ} 12' 21'' &= 420^{\circ} 16' 38'' = 360^{\circ} + 60^{\circ} 16' 38'' \\ &\equiv 60^{\circ} 16' 38'' = 60^{\circ} + 00^{\circ} 16' 38'', \end{aligned}$$

which is Gemini $00^{\circ} 16' 38''$.

PHU (denoted in FIGURE 4.6 as 'B3') lies in the intersection of Gemini 1st House (the native's well-being) and PH12 (trying situations). Moon is making a dexter square to PHU. As previously found for Event #B2, Moon refers to me as being developed to become an accepted member of a community. In the context of my initiation, the community is of a spiritual nature. Sun is making a sinister square to PHU. As previously found for Event #B2, Sun refers to me as achieving recognition through applying spiritual or professional know-how.

Jupiter is in Gemini 1st House with PHU. Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 10th House (achieving something significant; gaining prestige) and Sagittarius 7th House (partnerships; divine cooperation), and it is the natural representative of noble-minded action, high social position, and religion/spirituality. Jupiter lies in the intersection of Gemini 1st House and PH1, both houses referring to the native's well-being. In light of the foregoing, Jupiter refers to me as furthering wholesome intellectual development through religion/spirituality, science, or law.

Mercury (PHU's dispositor) is making a sinister trine to PHU. As previously found for Event #B2, Mercury refers to me as diligently applying know-how that involves clever action, speech, and spiritual or professional expertise.

EVENT #B4 (my mother's passing in 2012)

On Thursday, 20 September 2012, my mother passed away from illness. By this date, I had lived through 15 leap days (namely, those of 1956, 1960, 1964, 1968, 1972, 1976, 1980, 1984, 1988, 1992, 1996, 2000, 2004, 2008, and 2012). It follows that on the date of my mother's passing, my sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(15 \times 366) + (42 \times 365) + 23 + 30 + 31 + 30 + 31 + 31 + 20] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 57.53767 \text{ yrs.}$$

We may use PC9 and PC11 to generate a point that refers to a parent's dangerous illness. Let's use the Point of Dangerous Illness (PDI) for Event #B4.

PC9 is at Capricorn $19^{\circ} 54' 47''$, and so its ecliptic longitude is $289^{\circ} 54' 47''$. PC11 is at Pisces $19^{\circ} 54' 47''$, and so its ecliptic longitude is $349^{\circ} 54' 47''$. For $A \approx 57.53767$, we find that

$$A \text{ deg} \approx 57.53767 \text{ deg} \approx 57^{\circ} 32' 15''.$$

The ecliptic longitude of PDI is

$$\begin{aligned} 289^{\circ} 54' 47'' + 349^{\circ} 54' 47'' + 57^{\circ} 32' 15'' &= 697^{\circ} 21' 49'' = 360^{\circ} + 337^{\circ} 21' 49'' \\ &\equiv 337^{\circ} 21' 49'' = 330^{\circ} + 07^{\circ} 21' 49'', \end{aligned}$$

which is Pisces $07^{\circ} 21' 49''$.

PDI (denoted in FIGURE 4.6 as 'B4') lies in the intersection of Pisces 10th House and PH10, both houses referring to a parent's bodily death or bodily harm. Note that with respect to the 4th House (parents), the 10th House is the derived 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm). Venus is making a sinister sextile to PDI. Venus is the lord of Libra 5th House (personal interests) and Taurus 12th House (trying situations). Venus lies in the intersection of Capricorn 8th House and PH8, both houses referring to dealing with another's passing. In light of the foregoing, Venus refers to me as undergoing a trying situation because of another's passing.

Jupiter (PDI's dispositor) is the lord of Pisces 10th House (a parent's bodily death or bodily harm) and Sagittarius 7th House (a parent being gravebound). Note that with respect to the 4th House (parents), the 7th House is the derived 4th House (being gravebound), and the 10th House is the derived 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm). Jupiter lies in the intersection of Gemini 1st House and PH1, both houses referring to the native. In light of the foregoing, Jupiter refers to a parent passing away.

5. PRIMARY AND SECONDARY DIRECTIONS

5.1 Natal primary directions

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

Earth's axial rotation gives rise to primary motion. From the point of view of an earthbound observer, primary motion is perceived as Earth remaining at rest while the surrounding celestial sphere and everything on it (including the zodiacal belt) rotate about Earth's line of poles. The **method of primary directions** is a technique that uses primary motion to predict events. According to this technique, each longitudinal degree of Earth's axial rotation corresponds to approximately one completed year of the native's life. It takes about 4 minutes for Earth to longitudinally rotate by 01° , and so the native's life at A sidereal years of age is revealed by what is happening astrologically when they are about $(4 \times A)$ minutes old. For example, the native's life at age 90 is revealed by an astrological chart that is cast for when the native is about 360 minutes old.

If we take age 90 to be the human life span, then we can examine the native's entire life based on what is happening astrologically during the first 360 minutes (or 6 hours) after his birth. From TABLE 2.3, we see that each planet (apart from Moon) does not move very much along the zodiac during a 6-hour time period, and so we may view primary motion as causing the zodiacal belt (with the planets attached to it) to rotate backward through fixed houses of the local sky. During the 6-hour time period after birth, primary motion directs the planets into major aspects with the angles (the Ascendant, the Descendant, the Midheaven, and the Imum Coeli).

In Appendix A, we deal with primary directions in a mathematically elaborate way. But in this section, we will be dealing with primary directions in the fast and easy way that is presented by astrologer Anthony Louis in his blog post *Fast and Easy Primary Directions* (20 July 2019).

The **Naibod time-key** is the notion that each $00^\circ 59' 08.19''$ of Earth's axial rotation corresponds to one sidereal year of age. It follows that every addition of about 3.93167189 minutes to the birth time symbolically advances the natal chart by one sidereal year of age. The notion of natal primary directions gives rise to the following technique:

- **TECHNIQUE #PD1:** In order to examine the native's life around A sidereal years of age, cast symbolic charts for about $(3.93167189 \times A)$ minutes before and after the birth time. In these symbolic charts, look for major planet-to-angle aspects, taking the margin of inexactness to be about 01° . These major aspects are primary directions that each predict an event to occur in the native's life around A sidereal years of age.

Technique #PD1 helps us to look for prominent events at any age of the native's life. The primary directions that are shown in the pre-birth symbolic chart are said to be *neo-converse*. The primary directions that are shown in the post-birth symbolic chart are said to be *direct*.

About three months after his 39th birthday, King was assassinated on Thursday, 04 April 1968 in Memphis, Tennessee. Let's apply Technique #PD1 together with hindsight in order to see how King's passing shows up within the context of natal primary directions.

FIGURE 5.1a: King's natal chart again

(PC12) 15:45 12th PI	(PC11) 10:33 Ve 17:42 LSp 26:30 Mo 26:44 11th AQ	Su 02:16 (PC10) 05:21 Me 18:54 10th CP	Sa 02:30 (PC9) 10:33 9th SA	(PC8) 15:45 8th SC
Ju 08:19 (PC1) 20:57 1st AR	Martin Luther King Jr. Natal Chart (Sidereal Whole-Sign Houses) Tuesday, 15 JAN 1929 at 12:00 CST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			LRe 08:02 (PC7) 20:57 7th LI
(PC2) 15:45 Ma 29:02 R 2nd TA	(PC3) 10:33 LFo 15:24 3rd GE	(PC4) 05:21 4th CN	(PC5) 10:33 5th LE	(PC6) 15:45 6th VI

By the date of his assassination, King had lived through 10 leap days (namely, those of 1932, 1936, 1940, 1944, 1948, 1952, 1956, 1960, 1964, and 1968). It follows that on the date of his passing, King's sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(9 \times 366) + (30 \times 365) + 16 + 29 + 31 + 4] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 39.21629 \text{ yrs.}$$

On applying Technique #PD1 for $A \approx 39.21629$, we get

$$(3.93167189 \times A) \text{ min} \approx 154.18559 \text{ min} \approx 2 \text{ hr} + 34 \text{ min} + 11 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-change term with respect to the natal chart (FIGURE 5.1a).

For the pre-birth symbolic chart (FIGURE 5.1b), we subtract the chart-change term (2 hours, 34 minutes, and 11 seconds) from King's birth time of 12:00 pm, CST, thereby getting 09:25:49 am, CST. In this symbolic chart, we are looking for neo-converse primary directions that are associated with King's life around age 39. These are major planet-to-angle aspects having a margin of inexactness of about 01° . In this regard, we find a Moon-PC1 conjunction and a Mars-PC4 conjunction.

In the pre-birth symbolic chart, the Mars-PC4 conjunction is a neo-converse primary direction that may refer to King passing away. In this regard, we find the following for Mars:

[Natal] Mars in Taurus 2nd House: As previously found for Event #K3 in Section 4.3, Mars refers to death as coming to that which physically supports King's life.

[Pre-birth] Mars in Taurus 4th House: Mars is the lord of Aries 3rd House (threats of bodily harm) and Scorpio 10th House (being bound for bodily death). Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 10th House is the derived 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm), and the 3rd House is the derived 12th House (hidden enemies). Mars is the natural representative of hostile action and bodily injury. Mars lies in the intersection of Taurus 4th House (being gravebound) and PH3 (threats of bodily harm). In light of the foregoing, Mars refers to King as facing the threat of violent bodily death.

On putting it all together, the Mars-PC4 conjunction refers to King as facing the threat of violent bodily death.

FIGURE 5.1b: Pre-birth symbolic chart

Su 02:10 Me 18:44 (PC12) 26:06 12th CP	Sa 02:29 (PC11) 27:47 11th SA	(PC10) 29:29 10th SC	(PC9) 27:47 9th LI	(PC8) 26:06 8th VI
Ve 17:34 (PC1) 24:24 Mo 25:20 1st AQ	Martin Luther King Jr. (Natal Derivative) Symbolic Chart for Thursday, 04 APR 1968 Tuesday, 15 JAN 1929 at 09:25:49 CST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 24:24 7th LE
(PC2) 26:06 2nd PI	Ju 08:18 (PC3) 27:47 3rd AR	Ma 29:03 R (PC4) 29:29 4th TA	(PC5) 27:47 5th GE	(PC6) 26:06 6th CN

By trial and error, we find that the Mars-PC4 conjunction becomes exact at about 09:23:58 am, CST on Tuesday, 15 January 1929 (King's birth date). From 09:23:58 am, CST to 12:00 pm, CST (King's birth time), the time difference is

$$\text{elapsed time} = 2 \text{ hr} + 36 \text{ min} + 2 \text{ sec} \approx 156.03333 \text{ min}.$$

On making use of the Naibod time-key, this time difference corresponds to an age difference of

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{elapsed age} &\approx \frac{1 \text{ yr of age}}{3.93167189 \text{ min}} \times 156.03333 \text{ min} \approx 39.68625 \text{ yrs} \\
 &= 39 \text{ yrs} + \left(0.68625 \text{ yr} \times \frac{365.256363 \text{ days}}{1 \text{ yr}} \right) \approx 39 \text{ yrs} + 250.65718 \text{ days},
 \end{aligned}$$

and so the neo-converse Mars-PC4 conjunction predicts an event to occur about 251 days after Monday, 15 January 1968 (King's 39th birthday), which is on Sunday, 22 September 1968.

In Section B1 of Appendix B, we apply the primary-direction formula to the converse Mars-PC4 conjunction. On taking it to be traditionally converse, we get a prediction date in 1971. On taking it to be neo-converse, we get a prediction date of Monday, 23 December 1968.

For the post-birth symbolic chart (FIGURE 5.1c), we add the chart-change term (2 hours, 34 minutes, and 11 seconds) to King's birth time of 12:00 pm, CST, thereby getting 02:34:11 pm, CST. In this symbolic chart, we are looking for direct primary directions that are associated with King's life around age 39. These are major planet-to-angle aspects having a margin of inexactness of about 01° . In this regard, we find a Saturn-PC7 conjunction.

FIGURE 5.1c: Post-birth symbolic chart

Ma 29:01 R 12th TA	Ju 08:19 (PC12) 26:58 11th AR	(PC11) 20:41 10th PI	(PC10) 14:24 Ve 17:49 Mo 28:07 9th AQ	Su 02:23 (PC9) 20:41 Me 19:03 8th CP
(PC1) 03:15 (PC2) 26:58 1st GE	Martin Luther King Jr. (Natal Derivative) Symbolic Chart for Thursday, 04 APR 1968 Tuesday, 15 JAN 1929 at 14:34:11 CST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			Sa 02:30 (PC7) 03:15 (PC8) 26:58 7th SA
(PC3) 20:41 2nd CN	(PC4) 14:24 3rd LE	(PC5) 20:41 4th VI	(PC6) 26:58 5th LI	6th SC

In the post-birth symbolic chart, the Saturn-PC7 conjunction is a direct primary direction that may refer to King passing away. In this regard, we find the following for Saturn:

[Natal] Saturn in Sagittarius 9th House: Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 11th House (being bound for bodily death) and Capricorn 10th House (being bound for bodily death), and it is the natural representative of death. Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 10th House is the derived 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm), and the 11th House is the derived 8th House (bodily death). Saturn lies in the intersection of Sagittarius 9th House (supportive factors to bodily death) and PH8 (bodily death). Note that with respect to the 8th House (bodily death), the 9th House is the derived 2nd House (supportive persons or things). In light of the foregoing, Saturn refers to King as facing the threat of bodily death.

[Post-birth] Saturn in Sagittarius 7th House: Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 9th House (supportive factors to bodily death) and Capricorn 8th House (bodily death), and it is the natural representative of death. Note that with respect to the 8th House (bodily death), the 9th House is the derived 2nd House (supportive persons or things). Saturn lies in the intersection of

Sagittarius 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm) and PH6 (being subject to unwholesome influences). In light of the foregoing, Saturn refers to King as being subject to bodily death.

On putting it all together, the Saturn-PC7 conjunction refers to King as facing the threat of bodily death.

By trial and error, we find that the Saturn-PC7 conjunction becomes exact at about 02:30:59 pm, CST on Tuesday, 15 January 1929 (King's birth date). From 12:00 pm, CST (King's birth time) to 02:30:59 pm, CST, the time difference is

$$\text{elapsed time} = 2 \text{ hr} + 30 \text{ min} + 59 \text{ sec} = 150.98333 \text{ min}.$$

On making use of the Naibod time-key, this time difference corresponds to an age difference of

$$\begin{aligned} \text{elapsed age} &\approx \frac{1 \text{ yr of age}}{3.93167189 \text{ min}} \times 150.98333 \text{ min} \approx 38.40181 \text{ yrs} \\ &= 38 \text{ yrs} + \left(0.40181 \text{ yr} \times \frac{365.256363 \text{ days}}{1 \text{ yr}} \right) \approx 38 \text{ yrs} + 146.76366 \text{ days}, \end{aligned}$$

and so the direct Saturn-PC7 conjunction predicts an event to occur about 147 days after Sunday, 15 January 1967 (King's 38th birthday), which is on Sunday, 11 June 1967. This prediction date is many months before the date of King's passing (Thursday, 04 April 1968).

In Section B2 of Appendix B, we apply the primary-direction formula to the direct Saturn-PC7 conjunction, thereby getting a prediction date of Thursday, 13 June 1968. This prediction date is about 2 months after the date of King's passing (Thursday, 04 April 1968).

5.2 Solar-return primary directions

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

Let's adapt Technique #PD1 (of Section 5.1) for use with solar-return charts. The **SR time-key** is the notion that each degree of Earth's axial rotation corresponds to each degree of Earth's orbital motion. It follows that every addition of about 3.93167189 minutes to the SR time symbolically advances the SR chart by one mean solar day of age. See Section A5 of Appendix A for pertinent details. Here is our technique for SR primary directions:

- **TECHNIQUE #PD2:** In order to examine the native's life around D mean solar days after the SR date, cast symbolic charts for about $(3.93167189 \times D)$ minutes before and after the SR time. In these symbolic charts, look for major planet-to-angle aspects, taking the margin of inexactness to be about 01° . These major aspects are primary directions that each predict an event to occur in the native's life around D days after the SR date.

The primary directions that are shown in the pre-SR symbolic chart are said to be *neo-converse*. The primary directions that are shown in the post-SR symbolic chart are said to be *direct*.

On Thursday, 04 April 1968, Martin Luther King Jr. was assassinated. Having found pertinent primary directions at the natal-chart level (in Section 5.1), we can legitimately look for pertinent primary directions at the SR-chart level. In this regard, let's apply Technique #PD2 together with

hindsight. From Tuesday, 16 January 1968 (the SR date) to Thursday, 04 April 1968 (the date of King's passing), there are 79 mean solar days. On applying Technique #PD2 for $D = 79$, we get

$$(3.93167189 \times D) \text{ min} \approx 310.60208 \text{ min} \approx 5 \text{ hr} + 10 \text{ min} + 36 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-change term with respect to the SR chart (FIGURE 5.2a).

FIGURE 5.2a: King's 1968 SR chart again

(PC12) 16:00 Sa 13:33 12th PI	(PC11) 10:43 Ma 12:19 11th AQ	Su 02:16 (PC10) 05:27 Me 14:02 10th CP	(PC9) 10:43 9th SA	(PC8) 16:00 Ve 24:27 8th SC
(SR1) 21:16 1st AR	Martin Luther King Jr. Solar-Return Chart for Age 39 (Sidereal) Tuesday, 16 JAN 1968 at 13:00:30 EST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 21:16 7th LI
(PC2) 16:00 2nd TA	(PC3) 10:43 3rd GE	(PC4) 05:27 Mo 15:18 4th CN	(PC5) 10:43 Ju 11:25 R 5th LE	(PC6) 16:00 6th VI

For the pre-SR symbolic chart (FIGURE 5.2b), we subtract the chart-change term (5 hours, 10 minutes, and 36 seconds) from the SR time of 01:00:30 pm, EST, thereby getting 07:49:54 am, EST. In this symbolic chart, we are looking for neo-converse primary directions that are associated with King's life around the date of his passing. These are major planet-to-angle aspects having a margin of inexactness of about 01° . In this regard, we find a Sun-PC1 conjunction.

In the pre-SR symbolic chart, the Sun-PC1 conjunction is a neo-converse primary direction that may refer to King passing away. In this regard, we find the following for Sun:

[SR] Sun in Capricorn 10th House: Sun is the lord of Leo 5th House (supportive factors to being gravebound), and it is the natural representative of vitality. Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 5th House is the derived 2nd House (supportive persons or things). Sun lies in the intersection of Capricorn 10th House (being bound for bodily death) and PH9 (being subject to deadly influences). Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 9th House is the derived 6th House (being subject to unwholesome influences), and the 10th House is the derived 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm). In light of the foregoing, Sun refers to bodily death as a result of deadly influences.

[Pre-SR] Sun in Capricorn 1st House: Sun is the lord of Leo 8th House (bodily death), and it is the natural representative of vitality. Sun lies in the intersection of Capricorn 1st House

(bodily life or bodily health) and PH12 (hidden enemies). In light of the foregoing, Sun refers to bodily death at the hands of hidden enemies.

On putting it all together, the Sun-PC1 conjunction refers to King as facing the threat of bodily death at the hands of hidden enemies.

FIGURE 5.2b: Pre-SR symbolic chart

(PC12) 09:21 12th SA	(PC11) 15:46 Ve 24:11 11th SC	(PC10) 22:11 10th LI	(PC9) 15:46 9th VI	(PC8) 09:21 Ju 11:25 R 8th LE
Su 02:03 (PC1) 02:56 Me 13:40 1st CP	Martin Luther King Jr. (SR Derivative) Symbolic Chart for Thursday, 04 APR 1968 Tuesday, 16 JAN 1968 at 07:49:54 EST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 02:56 Mo 12:26 7th CN
(PC2) 09:21 Ma 12:09 2nd AQ	Sa 13:32 (PC3) 15:46 3rd PI	(PC4) 22:11 4th AR	(PC5) 15:46 5th TA	(PC6) 09:21 6th GE

FIGURE 5.2c: Post-SR symbolic chart

	(PC12) 27:16 12th CN	(PC11) 23:50 11th GE	Sa 06:57 (PC10) 20:24 10th TA	Ma 05:53 (PC9) 26:18 9th AR	8th PI
(PC1) 00:42 Mo 11:33 (PC2) 27:16 1st LE	Martin Luther King Jr. (SR Derivative) Symbolic Chart for Thursday, 04 APR 1968 Tuesday, 16 JAN 1968 at 18:11:06 EST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 00:42 Me 07:47 (PC8) 27:16 7th AQ	
Ju 04:47 R (PC3) 23:50 2nd VI	(PC4) 20:24 3rd LI	(PC5) 23:50 4th SC	Ve 18:06 (PC6) 27:16 5th SA	Su 25:53 6th CP	

By trial and error, we find that the Sun-PC1 conjunction becomes exact at about 07:46:43 am, EST on Tuesday, 16 January 1968 (the SR date). From 07:46:43 am, EST to 01:00:30 pm, EST (the SR time), the time difference is

$$\text{elapsed time} = 5 \text{ hr} + 13 \text{ min} + 47 \text{ sec} \approx 313.78333 \text{ min}.$$

On making use of the SR time-key, this time difference corresponds to an age difference of

$$\text{elapsed age} \approx \frac{1 \text{ day of age}}{3.93167189 \text{ min}} \times 313.78333 \text{ min} \approx 79.80913 \text{ days},$$

and so the neo-converse Sun-PC1 conjunction predicts an event to occur about 80 days after Tuesday, 16 January 1968 (the SR date), which is on Friday, 05 April 1968. This prediction date is 1 day after the date of King's passing (Thursday, 04 April 1968).

In Section B3 of Appendix B, we apply the primary-direction formula to the converse Sun-PC1 conjunction. On taking it to be traditionally converse, we get a prediction date of Thursday, 02 May 1968. On taking it to be neo-converse, we get a prediction date of Friday, 05 April 1968. This prediction date is 1 day after the date of King's passing (Thursday, 04 April 1968).

For the post-SR symbolic chart (FIGURE 5.2c), we add the chart-change term (5 hours, 10 minutes, and 36 seconds) to the SR time of 01:00:30 pm, EST, thereby getting 06:11:06 pm, EST. In this symbolic chart, we are looking for direct primary directions that are associated with King's life around the date of his passing. These are major planet-to-angle aspects having a margin of inexactness of about 01° . In this regard, we find nothing.

5.3 Lunar-return primary directions

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

The native's **lunar return** (LR) is Moon's monthly return to its natal position. A lunar-return month spans the time interval from one lunar return to the next one. A **lunar-return chart** is a transit chart that is cast for the time when a lunar return occurs, and we take it to represent the entire associated lunar-return month.

On Thursday, 04 April 1968, Martin Luther King Jr. passed away. Let's cast the lunar-return chart for King around April 1968. In order to find the time of the LR chart, we will make use of tropical ecliptic longitudes as a means to an end. At King's birth time, Moon's sidereal ecliptic longitude is $326^\circ 44' 06''$. At King's pertinent LR time, Moon's sidereal ecliptic longitude is the natal value of $326^\circ 44' 06''$, and the *ayanāṃśa* is $23^\circ 24' 13''$ according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. On adding this *ayanāṃśa* to Moon's sidereal ecliptic longitude, we get the LR tropical value of $350^\circ 08' 19''$. We find that Moon's tropical ecliptic longitude is $350^\circ 08' 19''$ on Wednesday, 27 March 1968 at 06:27:08 am, EST. FIGURE 5.3a presents King's last LR chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses.

Let's adapt Technique #PD1 (of Section 5.1) for use with lunar-return charts. The **LR time-key** is the notion that each degree of Earth's axial rotation corresponds to each degree of Moon's orbital motion. It follows that every addition of about 52.5615233 minutes to the LR time symbolically

advances the LR chart by one mean solar day of age. See Section A5 of Appendix A for pertinent details. Here is our technique for LR primary directions:

- **TECHNIQUE #PD3:** In order to examine the native's life around D mean solar days after the LR date, cast symbolic charts for about $(52.5615233 \times D)$ minutes before and after the LR time. In these symbolic charts, look for major planet-to-angle aspects, taking the margin of inexactness to be about 01° . These major aspects are primary directions that each predict an event to occur in the native's life around D days after the LR date.

The primary directions that are shown in the pre-LR symbolic chart are said to be *neo-converse*. The primary directions that are shown in the post-LR symbolic chart are said to be *direct*.

FIGURE 5.3a: King's last LR chart

(PC12) 09:43 Me 19:43 Ve 21:16 Mo 26:44 12th AQ	(PC11) 09:14 11th CP	(PC10) 08:45 10th SA	(PC9) 09:14 9th SC	(PC8) 09:43 8th LI
(PC1) 10:12 Su 13:27 Sa 20:52 1st PI	Martin Luther King Jr. Last Lunar-Return Chart (Sidereal) Wednesday, 27 MAR 1968 at 06:27:08 EST Atlanta, GA ($33^\circ 45' N$; $84^\circ 23' W$)			(PC7) 10:12 7th VI
Ma 06:13 (PC2) 09:43 2nd AR	(PC3) 09:14 3rd TA	(PC4) 08:45 4th GE	(PC5) 09:14 5th CN	Ju 03:25 R (PC6) 09:43 6th LE

On Thursday, 04 April 1968, Martin Luther King Jr. was assassinated. Having found pertinent primary directions firstly at the natal-chart level (in Section 5.1) and secondly at the SR-chart level (in Section 5.2), we can legitimately look for pertinent primary directions at the LR-chart level. In this regard, let's apply Technique #PD3 together with hindsight. From Wednesday, 27 March 1968 (the LR date) to Thursday, 04 April 1968 (the date of King's passing), there are 8 mean solar days. On applying Technique #PD3 for $D = 8$, we get

$$(52.5615233 \times D) \text{ min} \approx 420.49219 \text{ min} \approx 7 \text{ hr} + 0 \text{ min} + 30 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-change term with respect to the LR chart (FIGURE 5.3a).

For the pre-LR symbolic chart (FIGURE 5.3b), we subtract the chart-change term (7 hours, 0 minutes, and 30 seconds) from the LR time of 06:27:08 am, EST, thereby getting 11:26:38 pm, EST on the previous day. In this symbolic chart, we are looking for neo-converse primary directions that are associated with King's life around March/April 1968. These are major planet-

to-angle aspects having a margin of inexactness of about 01° . In this regard, we find a Moon-PC4 conjunction.

FIGURE 5.3b: Pre-LR symbolic chart

(PC12) 14:36	(PC11) 18:30	Ju 03:26 R (PC10) 22:24	(PC9) 18:30	(PC8) 14:36
12th LI	11th VI	10th LE	9th CN	8th GE
(PC1) 10:41	Martin Luther King Jr. (LR Derivative) Symbolic Chart for Thursday, 04 APR 1968 Tuesday, 26 MAR 1968 at 23:26:38 EST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 10:41
1st SC				7th TA
(PC2) 14:36	(PC3) 18:30	Me 19:18 Ve 20:55 (PC4) 22:24 Mo 23:04	Su 13:10 (PC5) 18:30 Sa 20:50	Ma 06:00 (PC6) 14:36
2nd SA	3rd CP	4th AQ	5th PI	6th AR

For the post-LR symbolic chart (FIGURE 5.3c), we add the chart-change term (7 hours, 0 minutes, and 30 seconds) to the LR time of 06:27:08 am, EST, thereby getting 01:27:38 pm, EST. In this symbolic chart, we are looking for direct primary directions that are associated with King's life around March/April 1968. These are major planet-to-angle aspects having a margin of inexactness of about 01° . In this regard, we find a Mars-PC1 square.

In the post-LR symbolic chart, the Mars-PC1 square is a direct primary direction that may refer to King passing away. In this regard, we find the following for Mars:

[LR] Mars in Aries 2nd House: Mars is the lord of Aries 2nd House (supportive persons or things) and Scorpio 9th House (supportive factors to bodily death), and it is the natural representative of hostile action and bodily injury. Note that with respect to the 2nd House (supportive persons or things), the 9th House is the derived 8th House (bodily death). In light of the foregoing, Mars refers to King as facing the threat of violent bodily death.

[Post-LR] Mars in Aries 10th House: Mars is the lord of Aries 10th House (being bound for bodily death) and Scorpio 5th House (supportive factors to being gravebound), and it is the natural representative of hostile action and bodily injury. Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 5th House is the derived 2nd House (supportive persons or things), and the 10th House is the derived 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm). Mars lies in the intersection of Aries 10th House and PH10, both houses referring to being bound for bodily death. In light of the foregoing, Mars refers to King as facing the threat of violent bodily death.

On putting it all together, the Mars-PC1 square refers to Mars bringing PC1 (the Ascendant) into line with its agenda of bodily death.

FIGURE 5.3c: Post-LR symbolic chart

(PC12) 02:53 12th GE		Ma 06:26 (PC11) 29:22 10th AR	Mo 00:22 Su 13:44 Sa 20:54 (PC10) 25:51 9th PI	(PC8) 02:53 Me 20:09 Ve 21:38 (PC9) 29:22 8th AQ
(PC1) 06:25 1st CN	Martin Luther King Jr. (LR Derivative) Symbolic Chart for Thursday, 04 APR 1968 Wednesday, 27 MAR 1968 at 13:27:38 EST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 06:25 7th CP
(PC2) 02:53 Ju 03:24 R (PC3) 29:22 2nd LE	(PC4) 25:51 3rd VI	(PC5) 29:22 4th LI		(PC6) 02:53 5th SC 6th SA

By trial and error, we find that the Mars-PC1 square becomes exact at about 01:27:43 pm, EST on Wednesday, 27 March 1968 (the LR date). From 06:27:08 am, EST (the LR time) to 01:27:43 pm, EST, the time difference is

$$\text{elapsed time} = 7 \text{ hr} + 0 \text{ min} + 35 \text{ sec} \approx 420.58333 \text{ min}.$$

On making use of the LR time-key, this time difference corresponds to an age difference of

$$\text{elapsed age} \approx \frac{1 \text{ day of age}}{52.5615233 \text{ min}} \times 420.58333 \text{ min} \approx 8.00173 \text{ days},$$

and so the direct Mars-PC1 square conjunction predicts an event to occur about 8 days after Wednesday, 27 March 1968 (the LR date), which is on Thursday, 04 April 1968. This prediction date is the date of King's passing.

In Section B4 of Appendix B, we apply the primary-direction formula to the direct Mars-PC1 square, thereby getting a prediction date of Thursday, 04 April 1968. This prediction date is the date of King's passing.

5.4 Birth-time rectification

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

The verb 'rectify' means 'to make right'. **Birth-time rectification** is the process of adjusting the native's birth time so that suitable planetary patterns coincide with actual life events. In this

section, we will use the three events presented in Section 4.3 to rectify King's birth time. In this regard, we will be taking 'suitable planetary patterns' to mean major planet-to-angle primary directions according to Technique #PD1 (of Section 5.1).

EVENT #K1 (King's wedding day in 1953)

On Thursday, 18 June 1953, Martin Luther King Jr. married Coretta Scott, who would later become a civil-rights leader in her own right. In Section 4.3, we found that King's sidereal age on the event date was about 24.42120 yrs. On applying Technique #PD1 for $A \approx 24.42120$, we get

$$(3.93167189 \times A) \text{ min} \approx 96.01615 \text{ min} \approx 1.60027 \text{ hr} \\ \approx 1 \text{ hr} + 36 \text{ min} + 1 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-change term.

On adding this chart-change term to 12:00:00 CST (King's assumed birth time), we get 13:36:01 CST on Tuesday, 15 January 1929 (King's date of birth). In the post-birth symbolic chart cast for this time, we find a Mars-PC10 trine that becomes exact at about 13:35:31 CST (about 13.59194 hr CST).

As previously found for Event #K1 in Section 4.3, Mars refers to King's marriage as being supportive and transformative. PC10 refers to achieving something significant and to gaining prestige. The trine aspect here refers to Mars as being helpful to PC10. King's marriage was a means for him to become a better man.

EVENT #K2 (King's DC speech in 1963)

On Wednesday, 28 August 1963, Martin Luther King Jr. delivered his famous "I Have A Dream" speech during the March on Washington for Jobs and Freedom. In Section 4.3, we found that King's sidereal age on the event date was about 34.61405 yrs. On applying Technique #PD1 for $A \approx 34.61405$, we get

$$(3.93167189 \times A) \text{ min} \approx 136.09109 \text{ min} \approx 2.26819 \text{ hr} \\ \approx 2 \text{ hr} + 16 \text{ min} + 6 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-change term.

On subtracting this chart-change term from 12:00:00 CST (King's assumed birth time), we get 09:43:54 CST on Tuesday, 15 January 1929 (King's date of birth). In the pre-birth symbolic chart cast for this time, we find a Saturn-PC10 conjunction that becomes exact at about 09:38:50 CST (about 9.64722 hr CST).

As previously found in Section 4.2, Saturn refers to King as achieving something significant through transformative spiritual leadership to further the common good. PC10 refers to achieving something significant and to gaining prestige. The conjunction aspect here refers to Saturn as being helpful to PC10.

EVENT #K3 (King's passing in 1968)

On Thursday, 04 April 1968, Martin Luther King Jr. was assassinated. See Section 5.1 for pertinent details of this event. We found that King's sidereal age on the event date was about 39.21629 yrs. Moreover, on applying Technique #PD1 for $A \approx 39.21629$, we got

$$154.18559 \text{ min} \approx 2.56976 \text{ hr} \approx 2 \text{ hr} + 34 \text{ min} + 11 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-change term.

On subtracting the chart-change term from 12:00:00 CST (King's assumed birth time), we got 09:25:49 CST on Tuesday, 15 January 1929 (King's date of birth). In the pre-birth symbolic chart cast for this time, we found a Mars-PC4 conjunction that becomes exact at about 09:23:58 CST (about 9.39944 *hr* CST). On adding the chart-change term to 12:00:00 CST (King's assumed birth time), we got 14:34:11 CST. In the post-birth symbolic chart cast for this time, we found a Saturn-PC7 conjunction that becomes exact at about 14:30:59 CST (about 14.51639 *hr* CST).

As previously found in Section 5.1, Saturn refers to King as facing the threat of bodily death. PC7 refers to bodily death or bodily harm. The conjunction aspect here refers to Saturn as being helpful to PC7.

RECTIFICATION (Linear regression)

Our process of rectifying the birth time is based on the model equation

$$y = x + b ,$$

whose graph is a straight line having a slope value of 1 and an intercept value of b . For the native at A sidereal years of age, the quantity x is the chart-addition term, which is given by

$$x = \begin{cases} -(3.93167189 \times A) \text{ min} & \text{for a pre-birth symbolic chart} \\ +(3.93167189 \times A) \text{ min} & \text{for a post-birth symbolic chart} . \end{cases}$$

It is advisable here to express x in hours. For a given value of x , the quantity y is the time at which an associated primary direction becomes exact. The constant b is the rectified birth time. It is advisable here to express y and b in hours according to the 24-hour time format. TABLE 5.4 presents the xy pairs pertaining to our three events of interest.

Each xy pair in the table is a data point. The technique of linear regression enables us to find the straight line that best accommodates our four data points. In this regard, we find that the equation of our best line is

$$y \approx (1.00437308)x + 11.9564577 .$$

On comparing this equation with the model equation $y = x + b$, we see that 1.00437308 (the best-line's slope) approximates the number 1 (the model-line's slope). Moreover, we see that 11.9564577 (the best-line's intercept) approximates b (the model-line's intercept):

$$b \approx 11.9564577 \text{ hr} \approx 11 \text{ hr} + 57 \text{ min} + 23 \text{ sec} .$$

Therefore, King's rectified birth time is about 11:57:23 am, CST.

TABLE 5.4: Data points for King's birth-time rectification

Event	Age (in yrs)	x (in hrs)	y (in hrs)
#1	24.42120	+1.60027	13.59194
#2	34.61405	−2.26819	9.64722
#3	39.21629	−2.56976	9.39944
#3	39.21629	+2.56976	14.51639

The birth-time rectification here is based on four data points. The more data points that we use for the linear regression, the better we can adjust the birth time.

IMPORTANT COMMENTS: We may use the process of birth-time rectification to not only adjust an assumed birth time, but also to determine an unknown birth time. Our process here depends on finding an adequate number of suitable primary directions.

5.5 Secondary progressions

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

Earth's orbital motion about Sun gives rise to secondary motion. From the point of view of an earthbound observer, secondary is perceived as Earth remaining at rest while Sun and other direct-motion planets move forward along the zodiac. The **method of secondary progressions** (or **secondary directions**) is a technique that uses secondary motion to predict events. According to this technique, each mean solar day after birth corresponds to one completed sidereal year of the native's life. Therefore, the native's life at A sidereal years of age is revealed by what is happening astrologically when they are A days old. For example, the native's life at age 90 is revealed by an astrological chart that is cast for when the native is 90 days old.

If we take age 90 to be the human life span, then we can examine the native's entire life based on what is happening astrologically during the first 3 months after their birth.

Let SP1 denote the Ascendant of the secondary-progression (SP) chart. In order to examine the native's life at a given time, it is useful to consider the following in both the natal and SP charts: [1] SP1 and major aspects to it, [2] planets in the house location of SP1, and [3] the SP1 ruler and its major aspects.

Firstly, SP1 refers to the native's situation at the time of interest. Moreover, planets that make major aspects to SP1 indicate factors that further describe the native's situation at the time of interest. Secondly, planets in the house location of SP1 further describe the native's situation at

the time of interest. Thirdly, the SP1 ruler represents the native at the time of interest, and its house location indicates where the native gives great attention and great effort. Moreover, planets that make major aspects with the SP1 ruler indicate factors that affect the SP1 ruler for good or for bad.

FIGURE 5.5a: SP1 in King's natal chart

(PC12) 15:45 12th PI	(PC11) 10:33 Ve 17:42 Mo 26:44 11th AQ	Su 02:16 (PC10) 05:21 Me 18:54 10th CP	Sa 02:30 <K2> 05:54 (PC9) 10:33 9th SA	(PC8) 15:45 8th SC
Ju 08:19 (PC1) 20:57 1st AR	Martin Luther King Jr. Natal Chart (Sidereal Whole-Sign Houses) Tuesday, 15 JAN 1929 at 12:00 CST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 20:57 7th LI
(PC2) 15:45 Ma 29:02 R 2nd TA	(PC3) 10:33 3rd GE	(PC4) 05:21 4th CN	<K3> 09:15 (PC5) 10:33 5th LE	(PC6) 15:45 <K1> 29:03 6th VI

In this section, we will use secondary progressions together with hindsight in order to examine three particular events in King's life: [1] his wedding day in 1953, [2] his DC speech in 1963, and [3] his passing in 1968.

EVENT #K1 (King's wedding day in 1953)

On Thursday, 18 June 1953, Martin Luther King Jr. married Coretta Scott, who would later become a civil-rights leader in her own right. In Section 4.3, we found that King's sidereal age on the event date was about 24.42120 yrs. For $A \approx 24.42120$, we get

$$A \text{ days} \approx 24.42120 \text{ days} \approx 24 \text{ days} + 10 \text{ hr} + 6 \text{ min} + 32 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-addition term.

On adding the chart-addition term to King's time of birth (Tuesday, 15 January 1929 at 12:00 pm, CST), we get Friday, 08 February 1929 at 10:06:32 pm, CST. FIGURE 5.5b presents King's SP chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāṃśa* here is 22° 51' 17" according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. The SP Ascendant (SP1) is at Virgo 29° 03' 33".

Let's examine the natal chart. In FIGURE 5.5a, SP1 (denoted there as 'K1') lies in the intersection of Virgo 6th House and PH6, both houses referring to being of service to others. Sun is making a

dexter square to SP1. As previously found for Event #K1 in Section 4.3, natal Sun refers to King as gaining prestige by being a good husband according to spiritual standards. Mars is making a sinister trine to SP1. As previously found for Event #K1 in Section 4.3, natal Mars refers to King as acquiring his ‘better half’.

As previously found for Event #K1 in Section 4.4, natal Mercury (the SP1 ruler) refers to King as using his wits to be a good servant leader.

FIGURE 5.5b: SP chart for Event #K1

(PC11) 00:31 (PC12) 29:47	(PC10) 01:16	(PC9) 00:31	Ma 29:05	Ju 10:54 (PC8) 29:47
12th LE	11th CN	10th GE	9th TA	8th AR
(SP1) 29:03	Martin Luther King Jr. Secondary Progression Chart (Sidereal) Friday, 08 FEB 1929 at 22:06:32 CST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			Ve 13:51 (PC7) 29:03
1st VI				7th PI
(PC2) 29:47		(PC3) 00:31 Sa 04:54	(PC4) 01:16 Mo 20:23 Me 22:38 R Su 27:05	(PC5) 00:31 (PC6) 29:47
2nd LI	3rd SC	4th SA	5th CP	6th AQ

Let’s examine the SP chart. In FIGURE 5.5b, Jupiter is making a sinister sextile to SP1. Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 10th House (achieving something significant; gaining prestige) and Sagittarius 7th House (marriage), and it is the natural representative of noble-minded action, high social position, and religion/spirituality. Jupiter lies in the intersection of Aries 11th House and PH11, both houses referring to comrades and shared interests. In light of the foregoing, SP Jupiter refers to King’s marital union as holy matrimony (that is, a marital union that is blessed by God).

Mercury (the SP1 ruler) is making a dexter trine to SP1 (the native’s well-being), and so it is making a sinister sextile to PC7 (marriage). Mercury is the lord of Gemini 10th House (achieving something significant; gaining prestige) and Virgo 1st House (the native’s well-being). Mercury lies in the intersection of Capricorn 5th House (personal interests) and PH4 (comfort and security). In light of the foregoing, SP Mercury refers to King’s marriage as a prestigious endeavor that brings comfort and security.

There is a Moon-Mercury-Sun conjunction that lies in the intersection of Capricorn 5th House (personal interests) and PH4 (comfort and security). Moon is the lord of Cancer 11th House (comrades and shared interests), and it is the natural representative of nurturing. Sun is the lord of Leo 12th House (trying situations), and it is the natural representative of leaders and social

recognition. In light of the foregoing, the SP Moon-Mercury-Sun conjunction refers to King's marriage as a prestigious, nurturing endeavor that brings comfort and security through wholesome leadership.

EVENT #K2 (King's DC speech in 1963)

On Wednesday, 28 August 1963, Martin Luther King Jr. delivered his famous "I Have A Dream" speech during the March on Washington for Jobs and Freedom. In Section 4.3, we found that King's sidereal age on the event date was about 34.61405 yrs. For $A \approx 34.61405$, we get

$$A \text{ days} \approx 34.61405 \text{ days} \approx 34 \text{ days} + 14 \text{ hr} + 44 \text{ min} + 14 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-addition term.

On adding the chart-addition term to King's time of birth (Tuesday, 15 January 1929 at 12:00 pm, CST), we get Tuesday, 19 February 1929 at 02:44:14 am, CST. FIGURE 5.5c presents King's SP chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāṃśa* here is $22^\circ 51' 21''$ according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. The SP Ascendant (SP1) is at Sagittarius $05^\circ 54' 05''$.

FIGURE 5.5c: SP chart for Event #K2

(PC12) 11:55	(PC11) 17:56	(PC10) 23:57	(PC9) 17:56	(PC8) 11:55
12th SC	11th LI	10th VI	9th LE	8th CN
Sa 05:43 (SP1) 05:54	Martin Luther King Jr. Secondary Progression Chart (Sidereal) Tuesday, 19 FEB 1929 at 02:44:14 CST Atlanta, GA ($33^\circ 45' \text{ N}$; $84^\circ 23' \text{ W}$)			Ma 01:04 (PC7) 05:54 Mo 08:20
1st SA				7th GE
(PC2) 11:55 Me 16:02 st	Su 07:22 (PC3) 17:56	Ve 23:37 (PC4) 23:57	Ju 12:25 (PC5) 17:56	(PC6) 11:55
2nd CP	3rd AQ	4th PI	5th AR	6th TA

Let's examine the natal chart. In FIGURE 5.5a, SP1 (denoted there as 'K2') lies in the intersection of Sagittarius 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how) and PH8 (an ending that facilitates transformation).

Jupiter (the SR1 ruler) is making a dexter trine to SP1. As previously found in Section 4.2, natal Jupiter refers to King as achieving a high position by boldly dealing with trying situations through spiritual guidance.

Sun is applying to a sinister square with Jupiter. As previously found in Section 4.2, natal Sun refers to King as achieving recognition through diligent leadership efforts involving spiritual know-how. Saturn is in Sagittarius 9th House in conjunction to SP1, and it is applying to a sinister trine with Jupiter. As previously found in Section 4.2, natal Saturn refers to King as achieving something significant through transformative spiritual leadership to further the common good.

Let's examine the SP chart. In FIGURE 5.5c, Sun is making a dexter sextile to SP1. Sun is the lord of Leo 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how), and it is the natural representative of leaders and social recognition. Sun lies in the intersection of Aquarius 3rd House (community) and PH2 (supportive persons or things). In the context of King's DC speech, SP Sun refers to King as a spiritual leader of his community.

Jupiter (the SP1 ruler) is the lord of Sagittarius 1st House (the native) and Pisces 4th House (comfort and security), and it is the natural representative of noble-minded action, high social position, and religion/spirituality. In the context of King's DC speech, SP Jupiter refers to King as taking spiritual action in order to bring comfort and security.

Moon is applying to a dexter sextile with Jupiter. Moon is the lord of Cancer 8th House (an ending that facilitates change), and it is the natural representative of stages of change. Moon lies in the intersection of Gemini 7th House and PH7, both houses referring to partnerships and divine cooperation. In the context of King's DC speech, SP Moon refers to King as working with others to further social change according to divine standards.

Mercury is stationary and making a square with Jupiter. Mercury is the lord of Gemini 7th House (partnerships; divine cooperation) and Virgo 10th House (achieving something significant; gaining prestige; head persons), and it is the natural representative of clever action, speech, and expertise. Mercury lies in the intersection of Capricorn 2nd House and PH2, both houses referring to supportive persons or things. In the context of King's DC speech, SP Mercury refers to King as being a voice of spiritual advocacy on behalf of his supporters.

Sun is applying to a sinister sextile with Jupiter. As previously found, SP Sun refers to King as a spiritual leader of his community. Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 3rd House (community) and Capricorn 2nd House (supportive persons or things), and it is the natural representative of sober-minded action. Saturn lies in the intersection of Sagittarius 1st House (the native) and PH12 (trying situations). In the context of King's DC speech, SP Saturn refers to King as taking sober-minded action on behalf of his community.

EVENT #K3 (King's passing in 1968)

On Thursday, 04 April 1968, Martin Luther King Jr. was assassinated. See Section 5.1 for pertinent details of this event. In Section 4.3, we found that King's sidereal age on the event date was about 39.21629 yrs. For $A \approx 39.21629$, we get

$$A \text{ days} \approx 39.21629 \text{ days} \approx 39 \text{ days} + 5 \text{ hr} + 11 \text{ min} + 27 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-addition term.

On adding the chart-addition term to King's time of birth (Tuesday, 15 January 1929 at 12:00 pm, CST), we get Saturday, 23 February 1929 at 05:11:27 pm, CST. FIGURE 5.5d presents King's SP chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāmśa* here is 22° 51' 23" according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. The SP Ascendant (SP1) is at Leo 09° 15' 10".

FIGURE 5.5d: SP chart for Event #K3

(PC12) 08:14 12th CN	Ma 02:16 (PC11) 07:12 11th GE	(PC10) 06:11 10th TA	(PC9) 07:12 Ju 13:11 9th AR	(PC8) 08:14 Ve 27:41 8th PI
(SP1) 09:15 Mo 14:17 1st LE	Martin Luther King Jr. Secondary Progression Chart (Sidereal) Saturday, 23 FEB 1929 at 17:11:27 CST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 09:15 Su 12:00 7th AQ
(PC2) 08:14 2nd VI	(PC3) 07:12 3rd LI	(PC4) 06:11 4th SC	Sa 06:03 (PC5) 07:12 5th SA	(PC6) 08:14 Me 17:02 6th CP

Let's examine the natal chart. In FIGURE 5.5a, SP1 (denoted there as 'K3') lies in the intersection of Leo 5th House (supportive factors to being gravebound) and PH4 (being gravebound). Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 5th House is the derived 2nd House (supportive persons or things).

Jupiter is applying a sinister trine to SP1. As previously found for Event #K3 in Section 4.4, natal Jupiter refers to King's bodily death as being related to enemies in high places. Saturn is making a dexter trine to SP1. As previously found in Section 5.1, natal Saturn refers to King as facing the threat of bodily death.

Sun (the SP1 ruler) is the lord of Leo 5th House (supportive factors to being gravebound). Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 5th House is the derived 2nd House (supportive persons or things). Sun lies in the intersection of Capricorn 10th House (being bound for bodily death) and PH9 (being subject to deadly influences). Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 9th House is the derived 6th House (being subject to unwholesome influences), and the 10th House is the derived 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm). In the context of King's assassination, natal Sun refers to bodily death as a result of deadly influences.

Sun is applying a sinister square with Jupiter. As previously found, natal Jupiter refers to King's bodily death as being related to enemies in high places.

Let's examine the SP chart. In the SP chart (FIGURE 5.5d), Moon is making a conjunction to SP1. Moon is the lord of Cancer 12th House (hidden enemies). Moon lies in the intersection of Leo 1st House and PH1, both houses referring to the native's well-being. In the context of King's assassination, SP Moon refers to hidden enemies that threaten King's well-being.

Mars is making a sinister sextile to SP1. Mars is the lord of Aries 9th House (being subject to deadly influences) and Scorpio 4th House (being gravebound), and it is the natural representative of bodily injury. Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 9th House is the derived 6th House (being subject to unwholesome influences). Mars lies in the intersection of Gemini 11th House (being bound for bodily death) and PH10 (being bound for bodily death). Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 10th House is the derived 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm), and the 11th House is the derived 8th House (bodily death). In the context of King's assassination, SP Mars refers to King's bodily death as being related to unwholesome people.

Saturn is making a dexter trine to SP1. Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 7th House (bodily death or bodily harm) and Capricorn 6th House (being subject to unwholesome influences), and it is the natural representative of death. Saturn lies in the intersection of Sagittarius 5th House (supportive factors to being gravebound) and PH4 (being gravebound). Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 5th House is the derived 2nd House (supportive persons or things). In the context of King's assassination, SP Saturn refers to King's bodily death as being related to unwholesome people.

Sun (the SP1 ruler) is making an opposition to SP1 (bodily life or bodily health), and so it is making a conjunction to PC7 (bodily death or bodily harm). Sun is the lord of Leo 1st House (the native's well-being), and it is the natural representative of vitality. Sun lies in the intersection of Aquarius 7th House and PH7, both houses referring to bodily death or bodily harm. In the context of King's assassination, the Sun-SP1 opposition (or equivalently, the Sun-PC7 conjunction) refers to bodily life as encountering bodily death.

Moon is separating from an opposition with Sun. As previously found, SP Moon refers to hidden enemies that threaten King's well-being. Saturn is applying to a sinister sextile with Sun. As previously found, SP Saturn refers to King's bodily death as being related to unwholesome people.

Jupiter is separating from a dexter sextile with Sun. Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 8th House (bodily death) and Sagittarius 5th House (supportive factors to being gravebound), and it is the natural representative of high social position. Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 5th House is the derived 2nd House (supportive persons or things). Jupiter lies in the intersection of Aries 9th House and PH9, both houses referring to being subject to deadly influences. Note that with respect to the 4th House (being gravebound), the 9th House is the derived 6th House (being subject to unwholesome influences). In the context of King's assassination, SP Jupiter refers to King's bodily death as being related to unwholesome people in high places.

6. AN AMERICAN NATAL CHART

6.1 The Declaration of Independence

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

The Continental Congress began as the provisional government for the Thirteen Colonies of Great Britain. After the American Revolutionary War began in 1775, the Congress became the governing body by which the Thirteen Colonies (then known as the United Colonies) coordinated their resistance to British rule.

On Tuesday, 02 July 1776, the Continental Congress passed the Lee Resolution, which was the following decision:

Resolved – That these United Colonies are, and, of right ought to be, free and independent states, that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British Crown, and that all political connection between them, and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved.

After passing the Lee Resolution, the Continental Congress directed its attention to producing a written document that declared the independence of the United Colonies. The Declaration of Independence was written mainly by congressional member Thomas Jefferson, and its final revision was ratified on Thursday, 04 July 1776.

Congressional member John Adams took Tuesday, 02 July 1776 to be the birth of the United States of America. On Wednesday, 03 July 1776, he wrote a letter to his wife Abigail, saying:

The second day of July 1776 will be the most memorable epoch in the history of America. I am apt to believe that it will be celebrated, by succeeding generations, as the great anniversary festival. It ought to be commemorated, as the day of deliverance by solemn acts of devotion to God Almighty. It ought to be solemnized with pomp and parade, with shows, games, sports, guns, bells, bonfires, and illuminations, from one end of this continent to the other, from this time forward forever more.

Nevertheless, the date of Thursday, 04 July 1776 has come to be taken as America's birth. Topmost in the Declaration of Independence is the phrase: "IN CONGRESS, July 4, 1776". Consequently, Americans have celebrated independence in following years on 04 July. It is interesting that John Adams and Thomas Jefferson both passed away on Tuesday, 04 July 1826, the 50th anniversary of the Declaration. We will take the ratification of the Declaration of Independence to be the birth of the United States of America (USA).

On Thursday, 29 September 1774, John Adams wrote a letter to his wife Abigail, describing a typical day for congressional members:

I shall be killed with kindness in this place. We go to Congress at nine, and there we stay most earnestly engaged in debates upon the most abstruse mysteries of state until three in the afternoon, then we adjourn, and go to dinner with some of the nobles of Pennsylvania at four, and feast upon ten thousand delicacies, and sit drinking Madeira, Claret, and Burgundy till six or seven, and then go home, fatigued to death with business, company, and care.

According to *Journals of the Continental Congress*,⁵ the Congress was scheduled to begin its business of Thursday, 04 July 1776 at 09:00 am. Consideration of the Declaration was the second item of business. After ratifying the Declaration and ordering it to be printed, the Congress's third item of business involved a congressional committee appointed to confer on the defense of New Jersey and Pennsylvania. In his article *Time and Temperature: Philadelphia, July 4, 1776*, historian Paul H. Smith⁶ presents a photograph of a letter written later that day by the appointed committee. The letter begins: "Gentleman, the Congress this morning directed us to confer ..." Smith goes on to write:

Examination of all available evidence provides no reason to doubt that the committee had indeed been appointed the morning of July 4, and since considerable time undoubtedly elapsed between adoption of the Declaration and the appointment of the committee, one is forced to the conclusion that the vote on the Declaration was probably taken some time before 11:00 am.

The Congress went on to consider many other matters of business before adjourning.

The historical material presented in this section has been presented by Chris Brennan in *The Libra Rising Birth Chart of the United States* (Friday, 07 August 2026), which is Episode 543 of the Astrology Podcast. For more pertinent details about the Declaration of Independence, see this podcast episode.

6.2 A USA natal chart

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

The Declaration of Independence was ratified at some time between 09:00 am, LAT and probably 11:00 am, LAT. Local Apparent Time (LAT) was the civil standard for timekeeping in the United Colonies in 1776. Local Apparent Time (LAT) is sundial time, which is a longitude-dependent time scale that is based on the actual position of Sun in the local sky. The length of an apparent (or actual) solar day varies during the course of a year, and so it is convenient to use Local Mean Time (LMT), which is based on the notion of a mean solar day (which is exactly 24 hours long by definition). Over the course of a year, LAT ranges from about 14 minutes slower to about 16 minutes faster than LMT. On the morning of Thursday, 04 July 1776, LAT was about 4 minutes behind LMT.

During the Congress's morning of business, we find (by trial and error) that a Leo Ascendant occurs before about 10:20:47 am, LMT and that a Virgo Ascendant occurs afterward. There is a Mars-PC10 conjunction that becomes exact at about 10:28:50 am, LMT. We will take our USA natal chart to be cast for the time of this Mars-PC10 conjunction.

FIGURE 6.2 presents our natal chart for the birth of the United States of America. Here we are taking the estimated birth time to be Thursday, 04 July 1776 at 10:28:50 am, LMT. The *ayanāmśa* here is 20° 43' 28" according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. The Ascendant is at Virgo 01° 36' 19".

⁵ *Journals of the Continental Congress, Vol. V*, United States Government Publishing Office (1906).

⁶ *The Quarterly Journal of the Library of Congress, Vol. 33, No. 4*, October 1976.

FIGURE 6.2: Our USA natal chart

(PC12) 01:13 12th LE	(PC11) 00:50 Me 03:35 R 11th CN	Ma 00:27 Ve 12:02 Ju 15:08 Su 22:19 10th GE	(PC9) 00:50 9th TA	(PC8) 01:13 LFo 11:41 8th AR
(PC1) 01:36 Sa 24:04 1st VI	United States of America Natal Chart (Sidereal Whole-Sign Houses) Thursday, 04 JUL 1776 at 10:28:50 LMT Philadelphia, PA (39° 57' N; 75° 10' W)			(PC7) 01:36 7th PI
(PC2) 01:13 2nd LI	(PC3) 00:50 3rd SC	(PC4) 00:27 4th SA	(PC5) 00:50 LSp 21:31 5th CP	(PC6) 01:13 Mo 02:25 LRe 13:59 6th AQ

Let's take a basic look at the USA natal chart by: [1] examining the 1st House, [2] examining the Lots of Fortune, Spirit, and Retribution, and [3] looking for interesting astrological configurations.

EXAMINING THE 1ST HOUSE

In natal astrology, the 1st House refers to the native. Examining the natal 1st House answers the question “Who is the native?” in astrological terms. In order to examine the 1st House, it is useful to consider: [1] the Ascendant and major aspects to it, [2] planets in the 1st House, and [3] the Ascendant ruler and its major aspects.

In the USA natal chart, PC1 (the Ascendant) is at Virgo 01° 36' 19". The Ascendant refers to the native's central personality traits:

Virgo Ascendant: The sign Virgo expresses Mercury in a feminine way. As an earth sign, Virgo is grounded and focused on material stability. As a dual sign, Virgo is adaptable and embraces change. Virgo has a keen eye for detail, which enables her to approach problems with logic and efficiency. Being analytical and pragmatic, she can adjust to changing circumstances while keeping a focus on detail and order. Like a virgin, Virgo sets a high standard for herself. If she sets her expectations too high, then she faces disappointment and a pessimistic outlook on life. At her best, feminine Virgo uses calculated thinking to determine how to make life run more smoothly for everyone.

The Declaration of Independence proclaims:

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights, that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness.

In proclaiming these words, America has set a high standard for itself.

Mercury is making a sinister sextile to PC1:

Mercury in Cancer 11th House: Mercury is the lord of Gemini 10th House (achieving something significant) and Virgo 1st House (the native's well-being), and it is the natural representative of clever action, speech, and expertise. Mercury lies in the intersection of Cancer 11th House and PH11, both houses referring to comrades and shared interests. At her best, feminine Cancer safeguards those who are near and dear. In light of the foregoing, Mercury refers to America as exemplifying its traditional Latin motto *E pluribus unum* ('out of many, one'), by which people from diverse backgrounds blend into a single unit.

Mercury is malefic because its dispositor is malefic waning Moon. Mercury lies zodiacally ahead of Sun, and so it is nocturnal. As a nocturnal malefic in a diurnal chart, Mercury is 'unhappy'. Therefore, Mercury brings difficulties that require great effort to overcome. The 11th House and PH11 each allow 50% house strength, and so Mercury's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(50\% + 50\%) = 50\%$. Therefore, Mercury takes effective action at a relatively good pace.

Mars is making a sinister square to PC1:

Mars in Gemini 10th House: Mars is the lord of Aries 8th House (an ending that facilitates transformation) and Scorpio 3rd House (community), and it is the natural representative of energetic assertive action. Mars lies in the intersection of Gemini 10th House and PH10, both houses referring to achieving something significant. At his best, masculine Gemini seeks to learn and communicate in order to further wholesome intellectual development. But on a negative note, Gemini's twinning may refer to two-facedness in the sense of hypocrisy (that is, professing standards that are contrary to one's actual behavior). In light of the foregoing, Mars refers to America's ongoing effort to "form a more perfect union" by fixing its flaws over time and by strengthening social bonds.

As a nocturnal malefic in a diurnal chart, Mars is 'unhappy'. Therefore, Mars brings difficulties that require great effort to overcome. The 10th House and PH10 each allow 100% house strength, and so Mars's overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(100\% + 100\%) = 100\%$. Therefore, Mars takes effective action quickly.

Mercury and Mars indicate factors that add to the native's central personality traits.

Let's now consider planets in the 1st House, which further indicate factors that add to the native's central personality traits. Saturn is in the 1st House. On a positive note, we find the following for Saturn:

[Positive] Saturn in Virgo 1st House: Saturn is the lord of Capricorn 5th House (personal interests) and Aquarius 6th House (being of service to others), and it is the natural representative of sober-minded action. Saturn lies in the intersection of Virgo 1st House and PH1, both houses referring to the native's well-being. At her best, feminine Virgo uses calculated thinking to determine how to make life run more smoothly for everyone. In light of

the foregoing, Saturn refers to America as taking a personal interest in furthering not only its own well-being, but also that of the world at large.

Many see America as being a ‘shining city on a hill’, that is, a beacon of hope for the world.

On a negative note, we find the following for Saturn:

[Negative] Saturn in Virgo 1st House: Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 6th House (sickness and servitude) and Capricorn 5th House (personal interests), and it is the natural representative of restraints and limitations and of hierarchical organization. Saturn lies in the intersection of Virgo 1st House and PH1, both houses referring to the native’s well-being. On a negative note, feminine Virgo may use calculated thinking to plot against others. In light of the foregoing, Saturn refers to America as being morally ill by creating a power differential in which Caucasians abuse other ethno-racial groups.

As a diurnal malefic in a diurnal chart, Saturn is ‘happy’. Therefore, Saturn brings difficulties that require moderate effort to overcome. The 1st House and PH1 each allow 100% house strength, and so Saturn’s overall house strength is $\frac{1}{2}(100\% + 100\%) = 100\%$. Therefore, Saturn takes effective action quickly.

In his famous 1852 speech ‘What to the Slave is the Fourth of July?’, the African-American abolitionist Frederick Douglass said: “The existence of slavery in this country brands your republicanism as a sham, your humanity as a base pretense, and your Christianity as a lie.”

Let’s now consider the Ascendant ruler and its major aspects. Mercury rules Aries (the rising sign), and so it is the Ascendant ruler. As previously found, Mercury refers to America as exemplifying its traditional Latin motto *E pluribus unum* (‘out of many, one’), by which people from diverse backgrounds blend into a single unit.

Planets that make major aspects with the Ascendant ruler indicate factors that affect the Ascendant ruler for good or for bad. There is nothing in this regard.

EXAMINING THE LOTS OF FORTUNE, SPIRIT, AND RETRIBUTION

In the USA natal chart, the Ascendant is at Virgo $01^{\circ} 36' 19''$, Sun is at Gemini $22^{\circ} 19' 58''$, Moon is at Aquarius $02^{\circ} 25' 03''$, and Saturn is at Virgo $24^{\circ} 04' 22''$. For the Lot of Fortune, we get

$$\begin{aligned} LFo &= Asc + Moon - Sun = 151^{\circ} 36' 19'' + 302^{\circ} 25' 03'' - 82^{\circ} 19' 58'' \\ &= 371^{\circ} 41' 24'' = 360^{\circ} + 11^{\circ} 41' 24'' \equiv 11^{\circ} 41' 24'' = 0^{\circ} + 11^{\circ} 41' 24'', \end{aligned}$$

which is Aries $11^{\circ} 41' 24''$. For the Lot of Spirit, we get

$$\begin{aligned} LSp &= Asc + Sun - Moon = 151^{\circ} 36' 19'' + 82^{\circ} 19' 58' - 302^{\circ} 25' 03'' \\ &= -68^{\circ} 28' 46'' \equiv -68^{\circ} 28' 46'' + 360^{\circ} = 291^{\circ} 31' 14'' = 270^{\circ} + 21^{\circ} 31' 14'', \end{aligned}$$

which is Capricorn $21^{\circ} 31' 14''$. For the Lot of Retribution, we get

$$\begin{aligned} LRe &= Asc + Saturn - LFo = 151^{\circ} 36' 19'' + 174^{\circ} 04' 22'' - 11^{\circ} 41' 24'' \\ &= 313^{\circ} 59' 17'' = 300^{\circ} + 13^{\circ} 59' 17'', \end{aligned}$$

which is Aquarius $13^{\circ} 59' 17''$.

The Lot of Fortune indicates how and where one can attract good luck to support their efforts. Regarding house location, the USA natal Lot of Fortune lies in the intersection of Aries 8th House and PH8, both houses referring to an ending that facilitates transformation. At his best, masculine Aries has the courage to jump into action in order to enthusiastically pursue worthy goals. As previously found, Mars refers to America's ongoing effort to "form a more perfect union" by fixing its flaws over time and by strengthening social bonds. In light of the foregoing, America can attract good luck by being a force for positive transformation.

The Lot of Spirit indicates how and where one can wholesomely develop their life potential. Regarding house location, the USA natal Lot of Spirit lies in the intersection of Capricorn 5th House and PH5, both houses referring to personal interests. At her best, feminine Capricorn is diligent – she gives steady, meticulous attention to ongoing tasks. As previously found, Saturn refers to America as taking a personal interest in furthering not only its own well-being, but also that of the world at large. In light of the foregoing, America can wholesomely develop its life potential by being a beacon of hope for the world.

The Lot of Retribution indicates how and where one can meet their downfall. Regarding house location, the USA natal Lot of Retribution lies in the intersection of Aquarius 6th House and PH6, both houses referring to sickness and servitude. At his best, masculine Aquarius is unselfish and makes improvements for the common good. As previously found, Saturn (the Lot's dispositor) refers to America as being morally ill by creating a power differential in which Caucasians abuse other ethno-racial groups. In this regard, the Lot of Retribution refers to America as meeting its downfall because of the chattel slavery of people of African ancestry, the genocide of American Indians, and ongoing practices that impede the wholesome efforts of non-Caucasians.

LOOKING FOR INTERESTING ASTROLOGICAL CONFIGURATIONS

Let's now look for interesting astrological configurations in the USA natal chart. A **stellium** is a concentration of planetary energy in which three or more planets are grouped together in the same sign or same house. In the USA natal chart, Venus, Sun, Mars, and Jupiter form a stellium in the intersection of Gemini 10th House and PH10. The 10th House and PH10 both refer to achieving something significant, gaining prestige, head persons, and being on top of a situation. At his best, masculine Gemini seeks to learn and communicate in order to further wholesome intellectual development. But on a negative note, Gemini's twinness may refer to two-facedness in the sense of hypocrisy (that is, professing standards that are contrary to one's actual behavior). The USA stellium indicates that America can be truly great if it lives up to the good things that it professes.

A Mars-PC10 conjunction was occurring while the Continental Congress was in the process of ratifying the Declaration of Independence. In this regard, we find the following for Mars:

Mars-PC10 conjunction: Mars is the lord of Aries 8th House (an ending that facilitates transformation) and Scorpio 3rd House (relatives), and it is the natural representative of hostile action and of things that are sharp or cutting. Mars lies in the intersection of Gemini 10th House and PH10, both houses referring to achieving something significant and to being on top of a situation. The Latin name for Gemini means ‘twins’. In light of the foregoing, Mars refers to the United Colonies as severing ties with their British kinfolk in order to have self-determination.

The conjunction here refers to Mars as being helpful to PC10 (achieving something significant; being on top of a situation).

6.3 Some Procted Ascendants

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

In this section, we will use the Procted Ascendant (PR1) together with hindsight in order to examine four particular events in America’s history: [1] the Constitution becoming operational in 1789, [2] the Battle of Fort Sumter in 1861, [3] the Attack on Pearl Harbor in 1941, and [4] the Civil Rights Act of 1964.

FIGURE 6.3: PR1 in the USA natal chart

(PC12) 01:13 12th LE	(PC11) 00:50 Me 03:35 R 11th CN	Ve 12:02 <A3> 14:08 Ju 15:08 Su 22:19 10th GE	(PC9) 00:50 <A4> 01:10 9th TA	(PC8) 01:13 8th AR
(PC1) 01:36 <A1> 21:33 Sa 24:04 <A2> 24:38 1st VI	United States of America Natal Chart (Sidereal Whole-Sign Houses) Thursday, 04 JUL 1776 at 10:28:50 LMT Philadelphia, PA (39° 57' N; 75° 10' W)			(PC7) 01:36 7th PI
(PC2) 01:13 2nd LI	(PC3) 00:50 3rd SC	(PC4) 00:27 4th SA	(PC5) 00:50 5th CP	(PC6) 01:13 Mo 02:25 6th AQ

EVENT #A1 (the Constitution becoming operational in 1789)

After being drafted in 1787 and being ratified mostly in 1788, the Constitution of the United States became operational on Wednesday, 04 March 1789. By this date, America had lived through 3 leap days (namely, those of 1780, 1784, and 1788). It follows that on the date of the Constitutional becoming operational, America’s sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(3 \times 366) + (10 \times 365) - 4 - 30 - 31 - 30 - 27] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 12.66508 \text{ yrs.}$$

For $A \approx 12.66508$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{profection addition term} &= (30 \times A) \text{ deg} \approx 379.95240 \text{ deg} \approx 379^\circ 57' 09'' \\ &= 360^\circ + 19^\circ 57' 09'' \equiv 19^\circ 57' 09''. \end{aligned}$$

The natal Ascendant is at Virgo $01^\circ 36' 19''$, and so its ecliptic longitude is $151^\circ 36' 19''$. We find that the ecliptic longitude of PR1 is

$$151^\circ 36' 19'' + 19^\circ 57' 09'' = 171^\circ 33' 28'' = 150^\circ + 21^\circ 33' 28'',$$

and so the Profected Ascendant (PR1) is at Virgo $21^\circ 33' 28''$.

Firstly, let's consider PR1 and major aspects to it. PR1 refers to the native's situation at the time of interest. PR1 (denoted in FIGURE 6.3 as 'A1') lies in the intersection of Virgo 1st House and PH1, both houses referring to the native's identity (that is, the set of characteristics by which the native is recognizable or known) and to the native's well-being. At her best, feminine Virgo uses calculated thinking to determine how to make life run more smoothly for everyone. Regarding America's identity, the Constitution aims to establish justice, ensure domestic tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty for all Americans now and forever.

Planets that make major aspects to PR1 indicate factors that further describe the native's situation at the time of interest. Sun and Jupiter are making a sinister square to PR1. Both planets are constituents of the USA stellium in Gemini 10th House. As stated in Section 6.2, the USA stellium indicates that America can be truly great if it lives up to the good things that it professes. Sun is the lord of Leo 12th House (unpleasant limitations; self-undoing), and it is the natural representative of leaders and bosses. Sun refers to America as professing legal principles of good governance, while legally accommodating an inferior status for people of African ancestry. Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 7th House (social contracts) and Sagittarius 4th House (comfort and security), and it is the natural representative of noble-minded action. Jupiter refers to the America as professing a noble-minded social contract that was not initially supportive to people of African ancestry.

Secondly, let's consider planets in the house location of PR1, which further describe the native's situation at the time of interest. Saturn is in Virgo 1st House with PR1. On a positive note, we found in Section 6.2 that Saturn refers to America as taking a personal interest in furthering not only its own well-being, but also that of the world at large. On a negative note, we found in Section 6.2 that Saturn refers to America as being morally ill by creating a power differential in which Caucasians abuse other ethno-racial groups.

Thirdly, let's consider the PR1 ruler and its major aspects. The PR1 ruler represents the native at the time of interest, and its house location indicates where the native gives great attention and great effort. As previously found in Section 6.2, Mercury (the PR1 ruler) refers to America as exemplifying its traditional Latin motto *E pluribus unum* ('out of many, one'), by which people from diverse backgrounds blend into a single unit.

Planets that make major aspects with the PR1 ruler indicate factors that affect the PR1 ruler for good or for bad. There is nothing in this regard.

EVENT #A2 (the Battle of Fort Sumter in 1861)

The American Civil War began on Friday, 12 April 1861 at 04:30 am, LMT, when South Carolina militia fired on Fort Sumter near Charleston, South Carolina. By this date, America had lived through 20 leap days (5 leap days in the 1700s and 15 leap days in the 1800s). It follows that at the start of the Civil War, America's sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(20 \times 366) + (65 \times 365) - 4 - 30 - 31 - 18] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 84.76786 \text{ yrs}.$$

For $A \approx 84.76786$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{profection addition term} &= (30 \times A) \text{ deg} \approx 2543.03580 \text{ deg} \approx 2543^\circ 02' 09'' \\ &= 7 \times 360^\circ + 23^\circ 02' 09'' \equiv 23^\circ 02' 09''. \end{aligned}$$

The natal Ascendant is at Virgo $01^\circ 36' 19''$, and so its ecliptic longitude is $151^\circ 36' 19''$. We find that the ecliptic longitude of PR1 is

$$151^\circ 36' 19'' + 23^\circ 02' 09'' = 174^\circ 38' 28'' = 150^\circ + 24^\circ 38' 28'',$$

and so the Projected Ascendant (PR1) is at Virgo $24^\circ 38' 28''$.

Firstly, let's consider PR1 and major aspects to it. PR1 refers to the native's situation at the time of interest. PR1 (denoted in FIGURE 6.3 as 'A2') lies in the intersection of Virgo 1st House and PH1, both houses referring to the native's well-being. On a negative note, feminine Virgo may use calculated thinking to plot against others. The origins of the Civil War were rooted in the desire of America's Southern states to maintain the chattel slavery of people of African ancestry, which was detrimental to America's well-being.

Planets that make major aspects to PR1 indicate factors that further describe the native's situation at the time of interest. Sun is making a sinister square to PR1. As previously found for Event #A1, Sun refers to America as professing constitutional principles of good governance, while constitutionally accommodating the chattel slavery of people of African ancestry.

Secondly, let's consider planets in the house location of PR1, which further describe the native's situation at the time of interest. Saturn is in Virgo 1st House with PR1 and is making a conjunction to it. On a negative note, we found in Section 6.2 that Saturn refers to America as being morally ill by creating a power differential in which Caucasians abuse other ethno-racial groups.

Thirdly, let's consider the PR1 ruler and its major aspects. The PR1 ruler represents the native at the time of interest, and its house location indicates where the native gives great attention and great effort. As previously found in Section 6.2, Mercury (the PR1 ruler) refers to America as exemplifying its traditional Latin motto *E pluribus unum* ('out of many, one'), by which people from diverse backgrounds blend into a single unit.

Planets that make major aspects with the PR1 ruler indicate factors that affect the PR1 ruler for good or for bad. There is nothing in this regard.

EVENT #A3 (the Attack on Pearl Harbor in 1941)

On Sunday, 07 December 1941, the Empire of Japan attacked the American naval base at Pearl Harbor in Oahu, Hawaii. By this date, America had lived through 39 leap days (5 leap days in the 1700s, 24 leap days in the 1800s, and 10 leap days in the 1900s). It follows that on the date of the attack, America's sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(39 \times 366) + (126 \times 365) + 27 + 31 + 30 + 31 + 30 + 7] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 165.41806 \text{ yrs} .$$

For $A \approx 165.41806$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{profection addition term} &= (30 \times A) \text{ deg} \approx 4962.54180 \text{ deg} \approx 4962^\circ 32' 30'' \\ &= 13 \times 360^\circ + 282^\circ 32' 30'' \equiv 282^\circ 32' 30'' . \end{aligned}$$

The natal Ascendant is at Virgo $01^\circ 36' 19''$, and so its ecliptic longitude is $151^\circ 36' 19''$. We find that the ecliptic longitude of PR1 is

$$\begin{aligned} 151^\circ 36' 19'' + 282^\circ 32' 30'' &= 434^\circ 08' 49'' = 360^\circ + 74^\circ 08' 49'' \\ &\equiv 74^\circ 08' 49'' = 60^\circ + 14^\circ 08' 49'' , \end{aligned}$$

and so the Projected Ascendant (PR1) is at Gemini $14^\circ 08' 49''$.

Firstly, let's consider PR1 and major aspects to it. PR1 refers to the native's situation at the time of interest. PR1 (denoted in FIGURE 6.3 as 'A3') lies in the intersection of Gemini 10th House and PH1, both houses referring to achieving something significant and on being on top of a situation. At his best, masculine Gemini seeks to learn and communicate in order to further wholesome intellectual development. The Attack on Pearl Harbor ended American isolationism and led to America becoming one of the 'Big Four' allied powers in World War II. The war helped to transform America into a global superpower.

Planets that make major aspects to PR1 indicate factors that further describe the native's situation at the time of interest. Venus and Jupiter are making a conjunction to PR1. Both planets are constituents of the USA stellium in Gemini 10th House. As stated in Section 6.2, the USA stellium indicates that America can be truly great if it lives up to the good things that it professes. Venus is the lord of Libra 2nd House (supportive persons or things) and Taurus 9th House (foreign countries or foreign people), and it is the natural representative of friendly action and intimate relationships. Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 7th House (partnerships) and Sagittarius 4th House (comfort and security), and it is the natural representative of noble-minded action. In the context of World War II, Venus and Jupiter each refer to America as allying itself with other nations in order to prevail over the Axis powers (Nazi Germany, Fascist Italy, and Imperial Japan).

Secondly, let's consider planets in the house location of PR1, which further describe the native's situation at the time of interest. Sun (a stellium constituent) is in Gemini 10th House with PR1.

Sun is the lord of Leo 12th House (trying situations), and it is the natural representative of leaders and bosses. In the context of World War II, Sun refers to America as gaining prestige by mobilizing its economy (thereby ending the Great Depression), fighting across two fronts (the European and Pacific Theatres), and helping to defeat the Axis powers.

Thirdly, let's consider the PR1 ruler and its major aspects. The PR1 ruler represents the native at the time of interest, and its house location indicates where the native gives great attention and great effort. As previously found in Section 6.2, Mercury (the PR1 ruler) refers to America as exemplifying its traditional Latin motto *E pluribus unum* ('out of many, one'), by which people from diverse backgrounds blend into a single unit. In the context of World War II, people from diverse countries blended into a single fighting force.

Planets that make major aspects with the PR1 ruler indicate factors that affect the PR1 ruler for good or for bad. There is nothing in this regard.

EVENT #A4 (the Civil Rights Act of 1964)

On Thursday, 02 July 1964, President Lyndon Baines Johnson signed a historic civil rights and labor bill into law. The Civil Rights Act of 1964 outlawed discrimination based on race, color, religion, sex, or national identity. By the date of the bill's enactment, America had lived through 45 leap days (5 leap days in the 1700s, 24 leap days in the 1800s, and 16 leap days in the 1900s). It follows that on date of the bill's enactment, America's sidereal age was about

$$\frac{[(45 \times 366) + (143 \times 365) - 2] \text{ days}}{365.256363 \text{ days/yr}} \approx 187.98577 \text{ yrs}.$$

For $A \approx 187.98577$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{profection addition term} &= (30 \times A) \text{ deg} \approx 5639.57310 \text{ deg} = 5639^\circ 34' 23'' \\ &= 15 \times 360^\circ + 239^\circ 34' 23'' \equiv 239^\circ 34' 23''. \end{aligned}$$

The natal Ascendant is at Virgo $01^\circ 36' 19''$, and so its ecliptic longitude is $151^\circ 36' 19''$. We find that the ecliptic longitude of PR1 is

$$\begin{aligned} 151^\circ 36' 19'' + 239^\circ 34' 23'' &= 391^\circ 10' 42'' = 360^\circ + 31^\circ 10' 42'' \\ &\equiv 31^\circ 10' 42'' = 30^\circ + 01^\circ 10' 42'', \end{aligned}$$

and so the Protected Ascendant (PR1) is at Taurus $01^\circ 10' 42''$.

Firstly, let's consider PR1 and major aspects to it. PR1 refers to the native's situation at the time of interest. PR1 (denoted in FIGURE 6.3 as 'A4') lies in the intersection of Taurus 9th House and PH9, both houses referring to spiritual or professional know-how. At her best, feminine Taurus is doggedly determined to make tangible progress in achieving a better quality of life. In the context of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (and the subsequent Voting Rights Act of 1965), SR1 refers to the American government as exercising its legal might to dismantle legal Jim Crow segregation, thereby helping to create a level playing field for African Americans.

Planets that make major aspects to PR1 indicate factors that further describe the native's situation at the time of interest. Moon is making a sinister square to PR1. Moon is the lord of Cancer 11th House (comrades and shared interests), and it is the natural representative of nurturers. Moon lies in the intersection of Aquarius 6th House and PH6, both houses referring to being of service to others. At his best, masculine Aquarius is unselfish and makes improvements for the common good. In the context of the Civil Rights Act, Moon refers to the coalition of civil-rights activists, labor organizers, and political leaders who worked to eliminate unfair treatment of people.

Mercury is making a dexter sextile to PR1. As previously found in Section 6.2, Mercury (the PR1 ruler) refers to America as exemplifying its traditional motto *E pluribus unum* (Latin: 'out of many, one'), by which people from diverse backgrounds blend into a single unit.

Secondly, let's consider planets in the house location of PR1, which further describe the native's situation at the time of interest. There is nothing in this regard.

Thirdly, let's consider the PR1 ruler and its major aspects. The PR1 ruler represents the native at the time of interest, and its house location indicates where the native gives great attention and great effort. Venus (the PR1 ruler) is a constituent of the USA stellium in Gemini 10th House. As stated in Section 6.2, the USA stellium indicates that America can be truly great if it lives up to the good things that it professes. Venus is the lord of Libra 2nd House (supportive persons or things) and Taurus 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how), and it is the natural representative of friendly action. In the context of the Civil Rights Act, Venus refers to the American government as exercising its legal might to further wholesome societal development.

Planets that make major aspects with the PR1 ruler indicate factors that affect the PR1 ruler for good or for bad. Venus is applying to a conjunction with Jupiter (a stellium constituent). As previously found for Event #A1, Jupiter refers to the America as professing a noble-minded social contract that was not initially supportive to people of African ancestry.

6.4 Some secondary progressions

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

In this section, we will use secondary progressions together with hindsight in order to examine four particular events in America's history: [1] the Constitution becoming operational in 1789, [2] the Battle of Fort Sumter in 1861, [3] the Attack on Pearl Harbor in 1941, and [4] the Civil Rights Act of 1964.

EVENT #A1 (the Constitution becoming operational in 1789)

After being drafted in 1787 and being ratified mostly in 1788, the Constitution of the United States became operational on Wednesday, 04 March 1789. In Section 6.3, we found that America's sidereal age on the event date was about 12.66508 yrs. For $A \approx 12.66508$, we get

$$A \text{ days} \approx 12.66508 \text{ days} \approx 12 \text{ days} + 15 \text{ hr} + 57 \text{ min} + 43 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-addition term.

On adding the chart-addition term to America's time of birth (Thursday, 04 July 1776 at 10:28:50 am, LMT), we get Wednesday, 17 July 1776 at 02:26:33 am, CST. FIGURE 6.4b presents America's SP chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāṃśa* here is 20° 43' 25" according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. The SP Ascendant (SP1) is at Gemini 03° 18' 15". Note that SP Jupiter is at Gemini 17° 59' 19" and that SP Venus is at Gemini 27° 34' 57".

FIGURE 6.4a: SP1 in the USA natal chart

(PC12) 01:13 12th LE	(PC11) 00:50 Me 03:35 R <A3> 24:29 11th CN	Ma 00:27 <A1> 03:18 Ve 12:02 Ju 15:08 10th GE	(PC9) 00:50 9th TA	(PC8) 01:13 8th AR
<A2> 01:35 (PC1) 01:36 Sa 24:04 1st VI	United States of America Natal Chart (Sidereal Whole-Sign Houses) Thursday, 04 JUL 1776 at 10:28:50 LMT Philadelphia, PA (39° 57' N; 75° 10' W)			(PC7) 01:36 7th PI
(PC2) 01:13 2nd LI	(PC3) 00:50 3rd SC	(PC4) 00:27 4th SA	(PC5) 00:50 5th CP	(PC6) 01:13 Mo 02:25 <A4> 23:15 6th AQ

Let's examine the natal chart. In FIGURE 6.4a, SP1 (denoted there as 'A1') lies in the intersection of Gemini 10th House and PH10, which is the region of the USA stellium. As stated in Section 6.2, the USA stellium indicates that America can be truly great if it lives up to the good things that it professes.

Moon is making a sinister trine to SP1. Moon is the lord of Cancer 11th House (comrades and shared interests), and it is the natural representative of nurturers. Moon lies in the intersection of Aquarius 6th House and PH6, both houses referring to being of service to others. At his best, masculine Aquarius is unselfish and makes improvements for the common good. In the context of the Constitution, natal Moon refers to America's Founding Fathers as aiming to establish justice, ensure domestic tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty for all Americans now and forever.

Venus is making a conjunction to SP1. Venus is the lord of Libra 2nd House (supportive persons or things) and Taurus 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how), and it is the natural representative of friendly action. In the context of the Constitution, Venus refers to America's Founding Fathers as using their expertise to craft a framework of good governance for the nation.

As previously found in Section 6.2, natal Mercury (the SP1 ruler) refers to America as exemplifying its traditional motto *E pluribus unum* (Latin: ‘out of many, one’), by which people from diverse backgrounds blend into a single unit.

FIGURE 6.4b: SP chart for Event #A1

	(PC12) 25:22	(PC11) 17:26	(PC10) 09:30	(PC9) 17:26
12th TA	11th AR	10th PI	9th AQ	8th CP
(SP1) 03:18 Ma 09:02 (PC2) 25:22 Me 26:09 R 1st GE	United States of America Secondary Progression Chart (Sidereal) Wednesday, 17 JUL 1776 at 02:26:33 LMT Philadelphia, PA (39° 57' N; 75° 10' W)			(PC7) 03:18 (PC8) 25:22 7th SA
Su 04:24 (PC3) 17:26 Mo 23:23 2nd CN	(PC4) 09:30 3rd LE	(PC5) 17:26 Sa 24:34 4th VI	(PC6) 25:22 5th LI	6th SC

Let’s examine the SP chart. In FIGURE 6.4b, SP1 lies in the region of a stellium formed by Mercury, Venus, Mars, and Jupiter in Gemini 1st House (the native’s identity; the native’s well-being). Like the natal USA stellium (see Section 6.2), the SP USA stellium indicates that America can be truly great if it lives up to the good things that it professes.

Mars is making a conjunction to SP1. Mars is the lord of Aries 11th House (comrades and shared interests) and Scorpio 6th House (being of service to others), and it is the natural representative of energetic assertive action. Mars lies in the intersection of Gemini 1st House and PH1, both houses referring to the native’s identity and to the native’s well-being. In the context of the Constitution, SP Mars refers to America’s Founding Fathers as aiming to establish justice, ensure domestic tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty for all Americans now and forever.

Mercury (the SP1 ruler) is the lord of Gemini 1st House (the native’s well-being) and Virgo 4th House (comfort and security), and it is the natural representative of clever action, speech, and expertise. Mercury lies in the intersection of Gemini 1st House (the native’s well-being) and PH2 (supportive persons or things). In the context of the Constitution, SP Mercury refers to America’s Founding Fathers as using their expertise to craft a framework of good governance for the nation.

Mercury is separating from a conjunction with Venus (at Gemini 27° 34' 57"). Venus is the lord of Libra 5th House (personal interests) and Taurus 12th House (unpleasant limitations; self-undoing), and it is the natural representative of social activities. Venus lies in the intersection of

Gemini 1st House (the native's well-being) and PH2 (supportive persons or things). In the context of the Constitution, SP Venus refers to the American government as professing a constitutional social contract that was not initially supportive to people of African ancestry.

Mercury is applying to a sinister square with Saturn. According to the principle of overcoming, Mercury dominates this square aspect. Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how) and Capricorn 8th House (an ending that facilitates transformation), and it is the natural representative of sober-minded action, rules and regulations, and hierarchical organization. Saturn lies in the intersection of Virgo 4th House (comfort and security) and PH5 (personal interests). In the context of the Constitution, SP Saturn refers to America as crafting a representative democracy, which was practically nonexistent in the 18th century. Instead of governing by the rule of a sovereign, the Constitution dictates rule by popular consent with laws drafted by the people's representatives.

EVENT #A2 (the Battle of Fort Sumter in 1861)

The American Civil War began on Friday, 12 April 1861 at 04:30 am, LMT, when South Carolina militia fired on Fort Sumter near Charleston, South Carolina. In Section 6.3, we found that America's sidereal age on the event date was about 84.76786 yrs. For $A \approx 84.76786$, we get

$$A \text{ days} \approx 84.76786 \text{ days} \approx 84 \text{ days} + 18 \text{ hr} + 25 \text{ min} + 43 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-addition term.

On adding the chart-addition term to America's time of birth (Thursday, 04 July 1776 at 10:28:50 am, LMT), we get Friday, 27 September 1776 at 04:54:33 am, LMT. FIGURE 6.4c presents America's SP chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāmśa* here is $20^\circ 43' 17''$ according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. The SP Ascendant (SP1) is at Virgo $01^\circ 35' 32''$.

Let's examine the natal chart. In FIGURE 6.4a, SP1 (denoted there as 'A2') lies in the intersection of Virgo 1st House (the native's well-being) and PH12 (unpleasant limitations; self-undoing). On a negative note, feminine Virgo may use calculated thinking to plot against others. The origins of the Civil War were rooted in the desire of America's Southern states to maintain the chattel slavery of people of African ancestry, which was detrimental to America's well-being.

Mercury (the SP1 ruler) is making a sinister sextile to SP1. As previously found in Section 6.2, natal Mercury refers to America as exemplifying its traditional Latin motto *E pluribus unum* ('out of many, one'), by which people from diverse backgrounds blend into a single unit. In the context of the Civil War, natal Mercury refers to America as working to preserve its unity of states.

Mars is making a sinister trine to SP1. As previously found in Section 6.2, natal Mars refers to America's ongoing effort to "form a more perfect union" by fixing its flaws over time and by strengthening social bonds. Moreover, natal Mars refers to the Southern Confederacy (officially known as the Confederate States of America) as severing ties with its northern kinfolk in order to have self-determination.

FIGURE 6.4c: SP chart for Event #A2

(PC12) 01:12 12th LE	(PC11) 00:49 Ju 01:25 Ma 25:16 11th CN	(PC10) 00:26 10th GE	(PC9) 00:49 9th TA	(PC8) 01:12 8th AR
(SP1) 01:35 Su 14:05 Ve 26:51 1st VI	United States of America Secondary Progression Chart (Sidereal) Friday, 27 SEP 1776 at 04:54:33 LMT Philadelphia, PA (39° 57' N; 75° 10' W)			(PC7) 01:35 Mo 10:24 7th PI
Sa 01:05 (PC2) 01:12 Me 05:56 2nd LI	(PC3) 00:49 3rd SC	(PC4) 00:26 4th SA	(PC5) 00:49 5th CP	(PC6) 01:12 6th AQ

Let's examine the SP chart. In FIGURE 6.4c, Jupiter is making a sinister sextile to SP1. Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 7th House (partnerships; opponents) and Sagittarius 4th House (comfort and security), and it is the natural representative of that which is large or spreading. Jupiter lies in the intersection of Cancer 11th House and PH11, both houses referring to comrades and shared interests. In the context of the Civil War, SP Jupiter refers to both the Union and the Southern Confederacy as seeking to spread their respective ways of life into an expanding America.

Mercury (the SP ruler) is separating from a dexter square with Jupiter. According to the principle of overcoming, Jupiter dominates this square aspect. Mercury is the lord of Gemini 10th House (being on top of a situation) and Virgo 1st House (the native's well-being), and it is the natural representative of clever action. Mercury lies in the intersection of Libra 2nd House and PH2, both houses referring to supportive persons or things. In the context of the Civil War, SP Mars refers to both the Union and the Southern Confederacy as preparing for war by mobilizing their respective armies.

Mercury is separating from a conjunction with Saturn. Saturn is the lord of Aquarius 6th House (sickness and servitude) and Capricorn 5th House (personal interests), and it is the natural representative of restraints and limitations and of hierarchical organization. Saturn lies in the intersection of Libra 2nd House (supportive persons or things) and PH1 (the native's well-being). In the context of the Civil War, SP Saturn refers to America as being morally ill by creating a power differential in which Caucasians abuse other ethno-racial groups.

EVENT #A3 (the Attack on Pearl Harbor in 1941)

On Sunday, 07 December 1941, the Empire of Japan attacked the American naval base at Pearl Harbor in Oahu, Hawaii. In Section 6.3, we found that America's sidereal age on the event date was about 165.41806 yrs. For $A \approx 165.41806$, we get

$$A \text{ days} \approx 165.41806 \text{ days} \approx 165 \text{ days} + 10 \text{ hr} + 2 \text{ min} + 0 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-addition term.

On adding the chart-addition term to America's time of birth (Thursday, 04 July 1776 at 10:28:50 am, LMT), we get Monday, 16 December 1776 at 08:30:50 pm, LMT. FIGURE 6.4d presents America's SP chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāmśa* here is $20^\circ 43' 39''$ according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. The SP Ascendant (SP1) is at Cancer $24^\circ 49' 36''$.

FIGURE 6.4d: SP chart for Event #A3

(PC12) 21:43 12th GE	(PC11) 18:38 11th TA	(PC10) 15:32 10th AR	(PC9) 18:38 9th PI	Mo 20:29 (PC8) 21:43 8th AQ
Ju 02:29 R (SP1) 24:49 1st CN	United States of America Secondary Progression Chart (Sidereal) Monday, 16 DEC 1776 at 20:30:50 LMT Philadelphia, PA ($39^\circ 57' \text{ N}$; $75^\circ 10' \text{ W}$)			Ve 06:56 (PC7) 24:49 7th CP
(PC2) 21:43 2nd LE	Ma 09:42 (PC3) 18:38 3rd VI	Sa 10:08 (PC4) 15:32 4th LI	(PC5) 18:38 Me 26:48 5th SC	Su 05:04 (PC6) 21:43 6th SA

Let's examine the natal chart. In FIGURE 6.4a, SP1 (denoted there as 'A3') lies in the intersection of Cancer 11th House and PH11, both houses referring to comrades and shared interests. The Attack on Pearl Harbor ended American isolationism and led to America becoming one of the 'Big Four' allied powers in World War II. The war helped to transform America into a global superpower.

Saturn is making a dexter sextile to SP1. On a positive note, we found in Section 6.2 that Saturn refers to America as taking a personal interest in furthering not only its own well-being, but also that of the world at large.

Moon (the SP1 ruler) is the lord of Cancer 11th House (comrades and shared interests), and it is the natural representative of compliant people. Moon lies in the intersection of Aquarius 6th House

and PH6, both houses referring to being of service to others. In the context of World War II, Moon refers to America as allying itself with other nations in order to prevail over the Axis powers (Nazi Germany, Fascist Italy, and Imperial Japan).

Let's examine the SP chart. In FIGURE 6.4d, Mercury is making a dexter trine to SP1. Mercury is the lord of Gemini 12th House (trying situations) and Virgo 3rd House (community), and it is the natural representative of clever action. Mercury lies in the intersection of Scorpio 5th House and PH5, both houses referring to personal interests. In the context of World War II, SP Mercury refers to America as using the war to pursue its national interests. The war drove America to mobilize its economy, thereby ending the Great Depression. Moreover, the war helped to transform America into a global superpower.

Moon (the SP1 ruler) is applying to a dexter square with Mercury. According to the principle of overcoming, Mercury dominates this square aspect. Moon is the lord of Cancer 1st House (the native's well-being), and it is the natural representative of compliant people. Moon lies in the intersection of Aquarius 8th House (an ending that facilitates transformation) and PH7 (partnerships; opponents). In the context of World War II, Moon refers to America as allying itself with other nations in order to prevail over the Axis powers (Nazi Germany, Fascist Italy, and Imperial Japan).

EVENT #A4 (the Civil Rights Act of 1964)

On Thursday, 02 July 1964, President Lyndon Baines Johnson signed a historic civil rights and labor bill into law. The Civil Rights Act of 1964 outlawed discrimination based on race, color, religion, sex, or national identity. In Section 6.3, we found that America's sidereal age on the event date was about 187.98577 yrs. For $A \approx 187.98577$, we get

$$A \text{ days} \approx 187.98577 \text{ days} \approx 187 \text{ days} + 23 \text{ hr} + 39 \text{ min} + 31 \text{ sec}$$

as the chart-addition term.

On adding the chart-addition term to America's time of birth (Thursday, 04 July 1776 at 10:28:50 am, LMT), we get Wednesday, 08 January 1777 at 10:08:21 am, LMT. FIGURE 6.4e presents America's SP chart in terms of sidereal whole-sign houses. The *ayanāṃśa* here is $20^\circ 43' 50''$ according to True Chitrā 0° Libra. The SP Ascendant (SP1) is at Aquarius $23^\circ 15' 59''$.

Let's examine the natal chart. In FIGURE 6.4a, SP1 (denoted there as 'A4') lies in the intersection of Aquarius 6th House and PH6, both houses referring to both houses referring to sickness and servitude. In the context of the Civil Rights Act, SP1 refers to the morally sick Jim Crow segregation system of second-class citizenship for African Americans.

Sun (at Gemini $22^\circ 19' 58''$) is making a dexter trine to SP1. Sun is a constituent of the USA stellium in Gemini 10th House. As stated in Section 6.2, the USA stellium indicates that America can be truly great if it lives up to the good things that it professes. As previously found for Event #A1 in Section 6.3, natal Sun refers to America as professing legal principles of good governance, while legally accommodating an inferior status for people of African ancestry.

Sun (at Gemini 22° 19' 58") is applying to a sinister square with Saturn (the SP1 ruler). According to the principle of overcoming, Sun dominates this square aspect. On a negative note, we found in Section 6.2 that Saturn refers to America as being morally ill by creating a power differential in which Caucasians abuse other ethno-racial groups.

FIGURE 6.4e: SP chart for Event #A4

Me 02:57 (PC12) 25:42 12th CP	(PC10) 00:36 Mo 15:12 Su 28:04 (PC11) 28:09 11th SA	10th SC	Sa 11:45 (PC9) 28:09 9th LI	Ma 19:09 (PC8) 25:42 8th VI
Ve 04:35 (SP1) 23:15 1st AQ	United States of America Secondary Progression Chart (Sidereal) Wednesday, 08 JAN 1777 at 10:08:21 LMT Philadelphia, PA (39° 57' N; 75° 10' W)			(PC7) 23:15 7th LE
(PC2) 25:42 2nd PI	(PC3) 28:09 3rd AR	4th TA	(PC4) 00:36 (PC5) 28:09 Ju 29:39 R 5th GE	(PC6) 25:42 6th CN

Let's examine the SP chart. In FIGURE 6.4e, Sun is making a sinister sextile to SP1. Sun is the lord of Leo 7th House (social contracts), and it is the natural representative of leaders and bosses. Sun lies in the intersection of Sagittarius 11th House (comrades and shared interests) and PH10 (achieving something significant; head persons; being on top of a situation). In the context of the Civil Rights Act, SP Sun refers to the coalition of civil-rights activists, labor organizers, and political leaders who worked to eliminate unfair treatment of people.

Jupiter is making a dexter trine to SP1. Jupiter is the lord of Pisces 2nd House (supportive persons or things) and Sagittarius 11th House (comrades and shared interests), and it is the natural representative of noble-minded action. Jupiter lies in the intersection of Gemini 5th House and PH5, both houses referring to personal interests. In the context of the Civil Rights Act, SP Jupiter refers to the coalition of civil-rights activists, labor organizers, and political leaders who worked to eliminate unfair treatment of people.

Saturn (the SP1 ruler) is the lord of Aquarius 1st House (the native's well-being) and Capricorn 12th House (unpleasant limitations; self-undoing), and it is the natural representative of sober-minded action. Saturn lies in the intersection of Libra 9th House (spiritual or professional know-how) and PH8 (an ending that facilitates transformation). At his best, masculine Libra inclines toward justice and strives for fairness in all situations. In the context of the Civil Rights Act, SP Saturn refers to the American government as exercising its legal might to dismantle legal Jim Crow segregation, thereby helping to create a level playing field for African Americans.

Moon is separating from a dexter sextile with Saturn. According to the principle of overcoming, Saturn dominates this sextile aspect. Moon is the lord of Cancer 6th House (being of service to others), and it is the natural representative of compliant people. Moon lies in the intersection of Sagittarius 11th House (comrades and shared interests) and PH10 (achieving something significant; head persons; being on top of a situation). At his best, masculine Sagittarius is not afraid to go beyond his comfort zone and to take risks in order to achieve worthy goals. In the context of the Civil Rights Act, SP Moon refers to the coalition of civil-rights activists, labor organizers, and political leaders who worked to eliminate unfair treatment of people.

APPENDIX A

The method of primary directions

A1 Equatorial coordinates

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

The **method of primary directions** is a technique that uses primary motion to predict events. In order to deal with the mathematics of primary directions, we will use the **equatorial coordinate system**, which enables us to specify the location of any point of the celestial sphere in terms of pertinent values of longitude and latitude. Equatorial longitude (called **right ascension**) is angular distance measured along the equator, going from 0° to 360° as we go eastward from the March equinox point. Equatorial latitude (called **declination**) is angular distance (along the celestial sphere) from the equator, going from 0° to $+90^\circ$ as we go perpendicularly northward and going from 0° to -90° as we go perpendicularly southward.

Converting from sidereal ecliptic coordinates to equatorial coordinates involves converting sidereal ecliptic coordinates to tropical ecliptic coordinates and then to equatorial coordinates. Adding the *ayanāmśa* to a sidereal ecliptic longitude yields its equivalent tropical ecliptic longitude, while tropical ecliptic latitude equals sidereal ecliptic latitude. See Section 2.1 for pertinent details.

Both tropical ecliptic longitude and right ascension are measured from the March equinox point. Going from tropical ecliptic coordinates to equatorial coordinates is a conversion from one system of spherical coordinates to another. Consider a point of the celestial sphere that has tropical ecliptic longitude λ and ecliptic latitude β . Its right ascension RA and declination δ satisfy the equations

$$\begin{aligned}\cos \delta \times \cos(RA) &= \cos \beta \times \cos \lambda, \\ \cos \delta \times \sin(RA) &= \cos \varepsilon \times \cos \beta \times \sin \lambda - \sin \varepsilon \times \sin \beta, \\ \sin \delta &= \sin \varepsilon \times \cos \beta \times \sin \lambda + \cos \varepsilon \times \sin \beta,\end{aligned}$$

where the **obliquity** ε is the angle between the ecliptic plane and the celestial equatorial plane (which is the same as Earth's equatorial plane). The obliquity is a slowly varying angle that is currently about $23^\circ 26' 09'' \approx 23.43583^\circ$. We find that

$$\delta = \arcsin(\sin \varepsilon \times \cos \beta \times \sin \lambda + \cos \varepsilon \times \sin \beta).$$

On defining the **equinoctial distance**

$$ED := \arccos\left(\frac{\cos \beta \times \cos \lambda}{\cos \delta}\right),$$

we get

$$RA = \begin{cases} ED & \text{for } \lambda < 180^\circ \\ 360^\circ - ED & \text{for } \lambda > 180^\circ. \end{cases}$$

Note that equinoctial distance is angular distance measured along the equator, going from 0° to 180° as we go eastward or westward from the March equinox point.

TABLE A1: Ecliptic latitudes for aspect copies

Aspect Copy	θ_A	β_A/β_0
Duodecile	30°	$+\sqrt{3}/2$
Sextile	60°	$+1/2$
Square	90°	0

Aspect Copy	θ_A	β_A/β_0
Trine	120°	$-1/2$
Quincunx	150°	$-\sqrt{3}/2$
Opposition	180°	-1

In order to get the ecliptic latitude of an aspect copy, we will use the **Bianchini aspect circle**. On the celestial sphere, this great circle passes through the parent planet's location and intersects the ecliptic at the two points corresponding to the planet's square aspects. In this regard, we will take each square copy to lie on the ecliptic at an intersection point, and we will take the opposition copy to lie at the point that is opposite the parent planet's location. It follows that the ecliptic latitude of an aspect copy having signature angular separation θ_A is given by

$$\beta_A = \beta_0 \times \cos \theta_A$$

where β_0 is the ecliptic latitude of the parent planet. TABLE A1 presents pertinent results.

A2 The primary-direction formula

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

Earth's axial rotation gives rise to primary motion. From the point of view of an earthbound observer, we may view primary motion as causing the zodiacal belt (with the planets attached to it) to rotate backward through fixed houses of the local sky. It is useful here to imagine two celestial spheres that occupy the same volume of space – the active sphere and the fixed sphere. The **active sphere** is the celestial sphere undergoing its usual axial rotation according to primary motion. The **fixed sphere** is the celestial sphere as it appeared at a specific time of interest, which could be a birth time, a solar-return time, or a lunar-return time. Primary motion moves the active sphere across the stationary fixed sphere.

In applying the method of primary directions, primary motion directs a given point of the active sphere backward through the houses toward a given point of the fixed sphere. One of these two points is called the **significator**, and it indicates the area of life in which the predicted event will occur. The other point is called the **promissor**, and it indicates that which promises (that is, gives grounds for expecting) the predicted event. A primary direction is said to be **direct** if primary motion directs a promissor lying in the active sphere toward a significator lying in the fixed sphere. A primary direction is said to be **traditionally converse** if primary motion directs a significator lying in the active sphere toward a promissor lying in the fixed sphere. A primary direction is said to be **neo-converse** if reversed primary motion (which is a what-if notion) directs a promissor lying in the active sphere toward a significator lying in the fixed sphere.

The **arc of direction** is the circular path along which primary motion directs the active point (which lies in the active sphere) toward the fixed point (which lies in the fixed sphere). The length of the arc of direction is related to the time when the associated event is predicted to occur in the native's life. For primary directions that are direct or traditionally converse, this arc length is given by the **primary-direction formula**

$$\text{arc length} = \begin{cases} (RA)_A - (RA)_F - R_F \times [(AD)_A - (AD)_F] & \text{for an eastern fixed point} \\ (RA)_A - (RA)_F + R_F \times [(AD)_A - (AD)_F] & \text{for a western fixed point,} \end{cases}$$

where the subscripts A and F respectively refer to the active point and the fixed point. The **ascensional difference** AD is given by

$$AD := \arcsin(\tan \delta \times \tan \Phi),$$

where Φ is the native's geographical latitude of birth. Note that geographical latitude is angular distance (along Earth's surface) from the equator, going from 0° to $+90^\circ$ as we go perpendicularly northward and going from 0° to -90° as we go perpendicularly southward. The nonnegative quantity

$$R_F = \left| \frac{(MD)_F}{(SA)_F} \right|$$

involves the ratio of the fixed-point's **meridian distance**

$$(MD)_F = \begin{cases} (RA)_F - (RA)_{MC} & \text{for a fixed point in the upper sky} \\ (RA)_F - (RA)_{IC} & \text{for a fixed point in the lower sky} \end{cases}$$

to its **semi-arc**

$$(SA)_F = \begin{cases} 90^\circ + (AD)_F & \text{for a fixed point in the upper sky} \\ 90^\circ - (AD)_F & \text{for a fixed point in the lower sky.} \end{cases}$$

Note that R_F must not exceed the value of 1.

For a neo-converse primary direction, we use the negative of the arc-length formula that we would get if the primary direction were direct.

A3 Directing toward a horizon angle

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

Whenever a planet is just rising during its daily cycle, primary motion has brought it to the Ascendant. For a direct primary direction having the Ascendant as the significator, the eastern Ascendant is the fixed point, and so the primary-direction formula yields

$$\text{arc length} = (RA)_P - (RA)_{Asc} - R_{Asc} \times [(AD)_P - (AD)_{Asc}],$$

where the subscript P refers to the promissor.

The Ascendant is on the horizon, but if we were to take it to be slightly above the horizon, then we would have

$$R_{Asc} = \left| \frac{(RA)_{Asc} - (RA)_{MC}}{90^\circ + (AD)_{Asc}} \right|.$$

The **oblique ascension** OA is given by

$$OA = RA - AD.$$

On making use of the expression

$$(OA)_{Asc} = (RA)_{MC} + 90^\circ,$$

we get

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{(RA)_{Asc} - (RA)_{MC}}{90^\circ + (AD)_{Asc}} &= \frac{(RA)_{Asc} - [(OA)_{Asc} - 90^\circ]}{90^\circ + (AD)_{Asc}} = \frac{90^\circ + [(RA)_{Asc} - (OA)_{Asc}]}{90^\circ + (AD)_{Asc}} \\ &= \frac{90^\circ + (AD)_{Asc}}{90^\circ + (AD)_{Asc}} = 1, \end{aligned}$$

and so $R_{Asc} = |1| = 1$.

The Ascendant is on the horizon, but if we were to take it to be slightly below the horizon, then we would have

$$R_{Asc} = \left| \frac{(RA)_{Asc} - (RA)_{IC}}{90^\circ - (AD)_{Asc}} \right|.$$

If Point #1 and Point #2 are opposite points of the celestial sphere, then

$$(RA)_2 = (RA)_1 - 180^\circ \equiv (RA)_1 + 180^\circ,$$

$$\delta_2 = -\delta_1 \Rightarrow (AD)_2 = -(AD)_1.$$

Because the Midheaven and Imum Coeli are opposite points of the celestial sphere, we get

$$(RA)_{IC} = (RA)_{MC} - 180^\circ \equiv (RA)_{MC} + 180^\circ,$$

and so

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{(RA)_{Asc} - (RA)_{IC}}{90^\circ - (AD)_{Asc}} &= \frac{(RA)_{Asc} - [(RA)_{MC} + 180^\circ]}{90^\circ - (AD)_{Asc}} \\ &= \frac{(RA)_{Asc} - [(OA)_{Asc} - 90^\circ] - 180^\circ}{90^\circ - (AD)_{Asc}} = \frac{-90^\circ + [(RA)_{Asc} - (OA)_{Asc}]}{90^\circ - (AD)_{Asc}} \\ &= \frac{-90^\circ + (AD)_{Asc}}{90^\circ - (AD)_{Asc}} = \frac{-[90^\circ - (AD)_{Asc}]}{90^\circ - (AD)_{Asc}} = -1. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, we get $R_{Asc} = |-1| = 1$.

Having shown that $R_{Asc} = 1$, we now have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{arc length} &= (RA)_P - (RA)_{Asc} - 1 \times [(AD)_P - (AD)_{Asc}] \\ &= [(RA)_P - (AD)_P] - [(RA)_{Asc} - (AD)_{Asc}], \end{aligned}$$

and so the expression

$$\text{arc length} = (OA)_P - (OA)_{Asc}$$

gives the arc length for a direct primary direction having the Ascendant as the significator.

Whenever a planet is just setting during its daily cycle, primary motion has brought it to the Descendant. For a direct primary direction having the Descendant as the significator, the western Descendant is the fixed point, and so the primary-direction formula yields

$$\text{arc length} = (RA)_P - (RA)_{Dsc} + R_{Dsc} \times [(AD)_P - (AD)_{Dsc}] ,$$

where the subscript P refers to the promissor.

The Descendant is on the horizon, but if we were to take it to be slightly above the horizon, then we would have

$$R_{Dsc} = \left| \frac{(RA)_{Dsc} - (RA)_{MC}}{90^\circ + (AD)_{Dsc}} \right| .$$

The **oblique descension** OD is given by

$$OD = RA + AD .$$

On making use of the expression

$$(OD)_{Dsc} = (RA)_{MC} - 90^\circ ,$$

we get

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{(RA)_{Dsc} - (RA)_{MC}}{90^\circ + (AD)_{Dsc}} &= \frac{(RA)_{Dsc} - [(OD)_{Dsc} + 90^\circ]}{90^\circ + (AD)_{Dsc}} = \frac{-90^\circ - [(OD)_{Dsc} - (RA)_{Asc}]}{90^\circ + (AD)_{Asc}} \\ &= \frac{-90^\circ - (AD)_{Dsc}}{90^\circ + (AD)_{Dsc}} = -1 , \end{aligned}$$

and so $R_{Dsc} = |-1| = 1$.

The Descendant is on the horizon, but if we were to take it to be slightly below the horizon, then we would have

$$R_{Dsc} = \left| \frac{(RA)_{Dsc} - (RA)_{IC}}{90^\circ - (AD)_{Dsc}} \right| .$$

On considering pertinent opposite points, we find that

$$\frac{(RA)_{Dsc} - (RA)_{IC}}{90^\circ - (AD)_{Dsc}} = \frac{[(RA)_{Asc} - 180^\circ] - [(RA)_{MC} - 180^\circ]}{90^\circ - [-(AD)_{Asc}]} = \frac{(RA)_{Asc} - (RA)_{MC}}{90^\circ + (AD)_{Asc}} ,$$

which we have already shown to be equal to 1. Therefore, we get $R_{Dsc} = |1| = 1$.

Having shown that $R_{Dsc} = 1$, we now have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{arc length} &= (RA)_P - (RA)_{DSC} + 1 \times [(AD)_P - (AD)_{DSC}] \\ &= [(RA)_P + (AD)_P] - [(RA)_{DSC} + (AD)_{DSC}] ,\end{aligned}$$

and so the expression

$$\text{arc length} = (OD)_P - (OD)_{DSC}$$

gives the arc length for a direct primary direction having the Descendant as the significator. Let's go further. For the point Q that is opposite the promissor, we have

$$(RA)_Q = (RA)_P - 180^\circ \equiv (RA)_P + 180^\circ , \quad (AD)_Q = -(AD)_P ,$$

and so

$$\begin{aligned}\text{arc length} &= [(RA)_P + (AD)_P] - [(RA)_{DSC} + (AD)_{DSC}] \\ &= [(RA)_Q + 180^\circ - (AD)_Q] - [(RA)_{ASC} + 180^\circ - (AD)_{ASC}] \\ &= [(RA)_Q - (AD)_Q] - [(RA)_{ASC} - (AD)_{ASC}] .\end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$\text{arc length} = (OA)_Q - (OA)_{ASC} ,$$

and so for a direct primary direction having the Descendant as the significator, we may consider the situation in which the promissor's opposite point reaches the Ascendant.

A4 Directing toward a meridian angle

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

Whenever a planet culminates during its daily cycle, primary motion has brought it to the Midheaven. For a direct primary direction having the Midheaven as the significator, the primary-direction formula yields

$$\text{arc length} = (RA)_P - (RA)_{MC} \mp R_{MC} \times [(AD)_P - (AD)_{MC}] ,$$

where the subscript P refers to the promissor.

Because the Midheaven is in the upper sky, we have

$$R_{MC} = \left\lfloor \frac{(RA)_{MC} - (RA)_{MC}}{90^\circ + (AD)_{MC}} \right\rfloor = 0 ,$$

and so the expression

$$\text{arc length} = (RA)_P - (RA)_{MC}$$

gives the arc length for a direct primary direction having the Midheaven as the significator.

Whenever a planet anti-culminates during its daily cycle, primary motion has brought it to the Imum Coeli. For a direct primary direction having the Imum Coeli as the significator, the primary-direction formula yields

$$\text{arc length} = (RA)_P - (RA)_{IC} \mp R_{IC} \times [(AD)_P - (AD)_{IC}] ,$$

where the subscript P refers to the promissor.

Because the Imum Coeli is in the lower sky, we have

$$R_{IC} = \left| \frac{(RA)_{IC} - (RA)_{IC}}{90^\circ - (AD)_{IC}} \right| = 0 ,$$

and so the expression

$$\text{arc length} = (RA)_P - (RA)_{IC}$$

gives the arc length for a direct primary direction having the Imum Coeli as the significator. Let's go further. We find that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{arc length} &= (RA)_P - (RA)_{IC} = [(RA)_P - 180^\circ] - [(RA)_{MC} - 180^\circ] \\ &= (RA)_Q - (RA)_{MC} , \end{aligned}$$

and so for a direct primary direction having Imum Coeli as the significator, we may consider the situation in which the promissor's opposite point reaches the Midheaven.

A5 Time-keys

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

In order to convert the length of the arc of direction into the time when the predicted event occurs, we need a time-key. The Ptolemy and Naibod time-keys are useful when applying the method of primary directions to a natal chart.

A **sidereal day** is the time taken by Earth to complete a single rotation relative to the fixed stars, and it consists of approximately 23 hours, 56 minutes, and 4.0905 seconds (which is about 1436.068175 minutes). A sidereal day is a few minutes short of a **mean solar day** (the basis of the 24-hour civil day), which is the time taken by Earth to complete a single rotation and to advance about one degree along its orbital path about Sun. A **sidereal year** is the time taken by Earth to complete its orbit about Sun relative to the fixed stars, and it consists of 365 mean solar days, 6 hours, 9 minutes, and 9.8 seconds (which is about 365.256363 mean solar days). A **mean tropical year** is the time taken by Earth to complete its annual cycle of seasons, and it consists of 365 mean solar days, 5 hours, 48 minutes, and 45.1 seconds (which is about 365.242189 mean solar days).

Earth's axial rotation gives rise to primary motion. As Earth makes its daily 360° rotation about its axis, it moves at an angular rate of

$$\frac{360 \text{ deg}}{1436.068175 \text{ min}} \approx \frac{1 \text{ deg}}{3.98907826 \text{ min}} ,$$

and so it takes Earth about 3.98907826 minutes to longitudinally rotate by 01° . The **Ptolemy time-key** (named after the Hellenistic astrologer Claudius Ptolemy) is the notion that one degree of Earth's axial rotation corresponds to one sidereal year of age. Therefore, according to the Ptolemy

time-key, each degree of the arc of direction corresponds to one sidereal year of age. Moreover, every addition of about 3.98907826 minutes to the birth time symbolically advances the natal chart by one sidereal year of age.

An alternative approach was developed by the 16th-century German astrologer Valentine Naibod. As Earth makes its yearly 360° orbit about Sun, it moves at an angular rate of

$$\frac{360 \text{ deg}}{365.256363 \text{ days}} \approx \frac{0.985609113 \text{ deg}}{1 \text{ day}} \approx \frac{00^\circ 59' 08.19''}{1 \text{ day}}.$$

We may view Earth's yearly 360° orbit as a sequence of nearly 365 steps, each of 0.985609113 *deg*. We may similarly view Earth's daily 360° axial rotation as a sequence of nearly 365 steps, each of 0.985609113 *deg*. Here we are viewing 0.985609113 *deg* (about 00° 59' 08.19'') as the basic step of Earth's angular motion, whether axial (daily cycle) or orbital (yearly cycle). The **Naibod time-key** is the notion that each 00° 59' 08.19'' of Earth's axial rotation corresponds to one sidereal year of age. Therefore, according to the Naibod time-key, each 0.985609113 *deg* of the arc of direction corresponds to one sidereal year of age. In this regard, we find that

$$\frac{1 \text{ yr of age}}{0.985609113 \text{ deg}} \approx \frac{1.01460101 \text{ yrs of age}}{1 \text{ deg}},$$

and so each degree of the arc of direction corresponds to about 1.01460101 sidereal years of age.

It takes Earth about 3.98907826 minutes to longitudinally rotate by 01°, and so

$$0.985609113 \text{ deg} \times \frac{3.98907826 \text{ min}}{1 \text{ deg}} \approx 3.93167189 \text{ min}$$

is the time taken by Earth to longitudinally rotate by about 00° 59' 08.19''. Therefore, according to the Naibod time-key, every addition of about 3.93167189 minutes to the birth time symbolically advances the natal chart by one sidereal year of age.

Let's now consider applying the method of primary directions to a solar-return (SR) chart. Primary motion is related to Earth's axial rotation, which has a time rate of

$$\frac{360 \text{ deg}}{1436.068175 \text{ min}} \approx \frac{1 \text{ deg}}{3.98907826 \text{ min}},$$

Solar returns are related to Earth's orbital motion about Sun, which has a time rate of

$$\frac{360 \text{ deg}}{365.256363 \text{ days}} \approx \frac{1 \text{ deg}}{1.01460101 \text{ days}}.$$

The **SR time-key** is the notion that each degree of Earth's axial rotation corresponds to each degree of Earth's orbital motion. Therefore, according to the SR time-key, each degree of the arc of direction corresponds to about 1.01460101 mean solar days of age. Moreover, every addition of about 3.98907826 minutes to the SR time symbolically advances the SR chart by 1.01460101 mean solar days of age. It follows that every addition of about 3.93167189 minutes to the SR time symbolically advances the SR chart by one mean solar day of age.

Let's now consider applying the method of primary directions to a lunar-return (LR) chart. Primary motion is related to Earth's axial rotation, which has a time rate of

$$\frac{360 \text{ deg}}{1436.068175 \text{ min}} \approx \frac{1 \text{ deg}}{3.98907826 \text{ min}}.$$

Lunar returns are related to Moon's orbital motion about Earth, which has a time rate of

$$\frac{360 \text{ deg}}{27.3216620 \text{ days}} \approx \frac{1 \text{ deg}}{0.0758935056 \text{ day}}.$$

Note that a **sidereal month** consists of 27 mean solar days, 7 hours, 43 minutes, and 11.6 seconds (which is about 27.3216620 mean solar days). The **LR time-key** is the notion that each degree of Earth's axial rotation corresponds to each degree of Moon's orbital motion. Therefore, according to the LR time-key, each degree of the arc of direction corresponds to about 0.0758935056 mean solar days of age. Moreover, every addition of about 3.98907826 minutes to the LR time symbolically advances the LR chart by 0.0758935056 mean solar days of age. It follows that every addition of about 52.5615233 minutes to the LR time symbolically advances the LR chart by one mean solar day of age.

APPENDIX B

Calculating some primary directions

Here we examine some primary directions that may be associated with the passing of the late Dr. Martin Luther King Jr. Using the tropical zodiac, we will apply the primary-direction formula of Appendix A to determine the date of the event predicted by each of these primary directions.

B1 King's natal Mars-PC4 conjunction

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

FIGURE B1 presents King's natal chart in terms of tropical whole-sign houses. Regarding this chart, the Mars-PC4 conjunction is a converse primary direction in which Mars is the promissor and PC4 (the Imum Coeli) is the significator.

FIGURE B1: King's natal chart (tropical)

(PC12) 08:36 12th AR	(PC11) 03:24 Ve 10:33 Mo 19:35 11th PI	Me 11:45 10th AQ	(PC9) 03:24 Su 25:08 (PC10) 28:12 9th CP	(PC8) 08:36 Sa 25:21 8th SA
Ju 01:10 (PC1) 13:48 1st TA	Martin Luther King Jr. Natal Chart (Tropical Whole-Sign Houses) Tuesday, 15 JAN 1929 at 12:00 CST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 13:48 7th SC
(PC2) 08:36 Ma 21:53 R 2nd GE	(PC3) 03:24 (PC4) 28:12 3rd CN		(PC5) 03:24 5th VI	(PC6) 08:36 6th LI

If we take the Mars-PC4 conjunction to be traditionally converse, then the fixed point is Mars, which lies in the lower eastern sky. For this situation, we have

$$\text{arc length} = (RA)_{IC} - (RA)_P - R_P \times [(AD)_{IC} - (AD)_P],$$

where

$$R_P = \left| \frac{(RA)_P - (RA)_{IC}}{90^\circ - (AD)_P} \right|.$$

Note that the subscript P refers to the promissor.

If we take the Mars-PC4 conjunction to be neo-converse, then the fixed point is the Imum Coeli, which lies in the lower sky. Here we use the negative of the arc-length formula that we would get if the primary direction were direct, and so

$$\text{arc length} = -[(RA)_P - (RA)_{IC}] = (RA)_{IC} - (RA)_P,$$

where the subscript P refers to the promissor.

Firstly, let's deal with Mars. In the tropical natal chart (FIGURE B1), Mars is at Gemini $21^\circ 53' 50''$ with an ecliptic latitude of $+03^\circ 26' 17''$. Therefore, we have

$$\lambda_P = 81^\circ 53' 50'' \approx 81.89722^\circ, \quad \beta_P = +03^\circ 26' 17'' \approx +3.43806^\circ.$$

We find that Mars's declination is

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_P &= \arcsin(\sin \varepsilon \times \cos \beta_P \times \sin \lambda_P + \cos \varepsilon \times \sin \beta_P) \\ &\approx \arcsin[\sin 23.43583^\circ \times \cos(+3.43806^\circ) \times \sin 81.89722^\circ \\ &\quad + \cos 23.43583^\circ \times \sin(+3.43806^\circ)] \\ &\approx +26.61960^\circ. \end{aligned}$$

The equinoctial distance here is

$$\begin{aligned} (ED)_P &= \arccos\left(\frac{\cos \beta_P \times \cos \lambda_P}{\cos \delta_P}\right) \approx \arccos\left[\frac{\cos(+3.43806^\circ) \times \cos 81.89722^\circ}{\cos(+26.61960^\circ)}\right] \\ &\approx 80.94529^\circ. \end{aligned}$$

Because $\lambda_P < 180^\circ$, we get $(RA)_P = (ED)_P \approx 80.94529^\circ$ as Mars's right ascension. King's geographic latitude of birth is $\Phi = 33^\circ 45' N = +33.75^\circ$. We find that

$$\begin{aligned} (AD)_P &= \arcsin(\tan \delta_P \times \tan \Phi) \approx \arcsin[\tan(+26.61960^\circ) \times \tan(+33.75^\circ)] \\ &\approx 19.56554^\circ \end{aligned}$$

is Mars's ascensional difference.

Secondly, let's deal with PC4 (the Imum Coeli). In the tropical natal chart (FIGURE B1), the Midheaven is at Capricorn $28^\circ 12' 25''$ with an ecliptic latitude of 0° exactly. Therefore, we have

$$\lambda_{MC} = 298^\circ 12' 25'' \approx 298.20694^\circ, \quad \beta_{MC} = 0^\circ.$$

We find that the Midheaven's declination is

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{MC} &= \arcsin(\sin \varepsilon \times \cos \beta_{MC} \times \sin \lambda_{MC} + \cos \varepsilon \times \sin \beta_{MC}) \\ &\approx \arcsin(\sin 23.43583^\circ \times \cos 0^\circ \times \sin 298.20694^\circ + \cos 23.43583^\circ \times \sin 0^\circ) \\ &\approx -20.51734^\circ. \end{aligned}$$

The equinoctial distance here is

$$(ED)_{MC} = \arccos\left(\frac{\cos \beta_{MC} \times \cos \lambda_{MC}}{\cos \delta_{MC}}\right) \approx \arccos\left[\frac{\cos 0^\circ \times \cos 298.20694^\circ}{\cos(-20.51734^\circ)}\right] \approx 59.69050^\circ.$$

Because $\lambda_{MC} > 180^\circ$, we get $(RA)_{MC} = 360^\circ - (ED)_{MC} \approx 300.30950^\circ$ as the Midheaven's right ascension. Because the Midheaven and the Imum Coeli are opposite points, we have

$$(RA)_{IC} = (RA)_{MC} - 180^\circ \approx 300.30950^\circ - 180^\circ = 120.30950^\circ,$$

$$\delta_{IC} = -\delta_{MC} \approx +20.51734^\circ.$$

King's geographic latitude of birth is $\Phi = 33^\circ 45' N = +33.75^\circ$. We find that

$$(AD)_{IC} = \arcsin(\tan \delta_{IC} \times \tan \Phi) \approx \arcsin[\tan(+20.51734^\circ) \times \tan(+33.75^\circ)]$$

$$\approx 14.48061^\circ$$

is the Imum Coeli's ascensional difference.

Thirdly, let's deal with the ratio R_P . We find that

$$R_P = \left| \frac{(RA)_P - (RA)_{IC}}{90^\circ - (AD)_P} \right| \approx \left| \frac{80.94529^\circ - 120.30950^\circ}{90^\circ - 19.56554^\circ} \right| \approx 0.55888.$$

Note that R_P must not exceed the value of 1.

Now we are ready to deal with the arc of direction for the converse Mars-PC4 conjunction. If we take the Mars-PC4 conjunction to be traditionally converse, then

$$\text{arc length} = (RA)_{IC} - (RA)_P - R_P \times [(AD)_{IC} - (AD)_P]$$

$$\approx 120.30950^\circ - 80.94529^\circ - 0.55888 \times (14.48061^\circ - 19.56554^\circ)$$

$$\approx 42.20608^\circ.$$

According to the Naibod time-key, this arc indicates

$$42.20608 \text{ deg} \times \frac{1.01460101 \text{ yrs of age}}{1 \text{ deg}} \approx 42.82233 \text{ yrs of age},$$

and so the traditionally converse Mars-PC4 conjunction predicts an event to occur sometime in 1971, which is greatly after King's passing on Thursday, 04 April 1968.

If we take the Mars-PC4 conjunction to be neo-converse, then

$$\text{arc length} = (RA)_{IC} - (RA)_P \approx 120.30950^\circ - 80.94529^\circ = 39.36421^\circ.$$

According to the Naibod time-key, this arc indicates

$$39.36421 \text{ deg} \times \frac{1.01460101 \text{ yrs of age}}{1 \text{ deg}} \approx 39.93897 \text{ yrs of age}$$

$$= 39 \text{ yrs} + \left(0.93897 \text{ yr} \times \frac{365.256363 \text{ days}}{1 \text{ yr}} \right) \approx 39 \text{ yrs} + 342.96477 \text{ days},$$

and so the neo-converse Mars-PC4 conjunction predicts an event to occur about 343 days after Monday, 15 January 1968 (King's 39th birthday), which is on Monday, 23 December 1968 (Day 358 of 1968).

B2 King's natal Saturn-PC7 conjunction

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

FIGURE B1 presents King's natal chart in terms of tropical whole-sign houses. Regarding this chart, the Saturn-PC7 conjunction is a direct primary direction in which Saturn is the promissor and PC7 (the Descendant) is the significator. For this situation, we have

$$\text{arc length} = (OD)_P - (OD)_{DSC},$$

where the subscript P refers to the promissor.

Firstly, let's deal with Saturn. In the tropical natal chart (FIGURE B1), Saturn is at Sagittarius $25^\circ 21' 07''$ with an ecliptic latitude of $+01^\circ 09' 56''$. Therefore, we have

$$\lambda_P = 265^\circ 21' 07'' \approx 265.35194^\circ, \quad \beta_P = +01^\circ 09' 56'' \approx +1.16556^\circ.$$

We find that the copy's declination is

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_P &= \arcsin(\sin \varepsilon \times \cos \beta_P \times \sin \lambda_P + \cos \varepsilon \times \sin \beta_P) \\ &\approx \arcsin[\sin 23.43583^\circ \times \cos(+1.16556^\circ) \times \sin 265.35194^\circ \\ &\quad + \cos 23.43583^\circ \times \sin(+1.16556^\circ)] \\ &\approx -22.18933^\circ. \end{aligned}$$

The equinoctial distance here is

$$\begin{aligned} (ED)_P &= \arccos\left(\frac{\cos \beta_P \times \cos \lambda_P}{\cos \delta_P}\right) \approx \arccos\left[\frac{\cos(+1.16556^\circ) \times \cos 265.35194^\circ}{\cos(-22.18933^\circ)}\right] \\ &\approx 95.01970^\circ. \end{aligned}$$

Because $\lambda_P > 180^\circ$, we get $(RA)_P = 360^\circ - (ED)_P \approx 264.98030^\circ$ as the copy's right ascension. King's geographic latitude of birth is $\Phi = 33^\circ 45' N = +33.75^\circ$. For the copy's ascensional difference, we get

$$\begin{aligned} (AD)_P &= \arcsin(\tan \delta_P \times \tan \Phi) \approx \arcsin[\tan(-22.18933^\circ) \times \tan(+33.75^\circ)] \\ &\approx -15.81508^\circ, \end{aligned}$$

and so

$$(OD)_P = (RA)_P + (AD)_P \approx 264.98030^\circ + (-15.81508^\circ) = 249.16522^\circ$$

is the copy's oblique descension.

Secondly, let's deal with PC7 (the Descendant). In the tropical natal chart (FIGURE B1), the Descendant is at Scorpio $13^\circ 48' 38''$ with an ecliptic latitude of 0° exactly. Therefore, we have

$$\lambda_{DSC} = 223^\circ 48' 38'' \approx 223.81056^\circ, \quad \beta_{DSC} = 0^\circ.$$

We find that the Descendant's declination is

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_{Dsc} &= \arcsin(\sin \varepsilon \times \cos \beta_{Dsc} \times \sin \lambda_{Dsc} + \cos \varepsilon \times \sin \beta_{Dsc}) \\ &\approx \arcsin(\sin 23.43583^\circ \times \cos 0^\circ \times \sin 223.81056^\circ + \cos 23.43583^\circ \times \sin 0^\circ) \\ &\approx -15.98188^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

The equinoctial distance here is

$$\begin{aligned}(ED)_{Dsc} &= \arccos\left(\frac{\cos \beta_{Dsc} \times \cos \lambda_{Dsc}}{\cos \delta_{Dsc}}\right) \approx \arccos\left[\frac{\cos 0^\circ \times \cos 223.81056^\circ}{\cos(-15.98188^\circ)}\right] \\ &\approx 138.64637^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

Because $\lambda_{Dsc} > 180^\circ$, we get $(RA)_{Dsc} = 360^\circ - (ED)_{Dsc} \approx 221.35363^\circ$ as the Descendant's right ascension. King's geographic latitude of birth is $\Phi = 33^\circ 45' N = +33.75^\circ$. For the Descendant's ascensional difference, we get

$$\begin{aligned}(AD)_{Dsc} &= \arcsin(\tan \delta_{Dsc} \times \tan \Phi) \approx \arcsin[\tan(-15.98188^\circ) \times \tan(+33.75^\circ)] \\ &\approx -11.03266^\circ,\end{aligned}$$

and so

$$(OD)_{Dsc} = (RA)_{Dsc} + (AD)_{Dsc} \approx 221.35363^\circ + (-11.03266^\circ) = 210.32097^\circ$$

is the Descendant's oblique descension.

Now we are ready to deal with the arc of direction for the direct Saturn-PC7 conjunction. We find that

$$\text{arc length} = (OD)_P - (OD)_{Dsc} \approx 249.16522^\circ - 210.32097^\circ = 38.84425^\circ.$$

According to the Naibod time-key, this arc indicates

$$\begin{aligned}38.84425 \text{ deg} &\times \frac{1.01460101 \text{ yrs of age}}{1 \text{ deg}} \approx 39.41142 \text{ yrs of age} \\ &= 39 \text{ yrs} + \left(0.41142 \text{ yr} \times \frac{365.256363 \text{ days}}{1 \text{ yr}}\right) \approx 39 \text{ yrs} + 150.27377 \text{ days},\end{aligned}$$

and so the direct Saturn-PC7 conjunction predicts an event to occur about 150 days after Monday, 15 January 1968 (King's 39th birthday), which is on Thursday, 13 June 1968 (Day 165 of 1968).

B3 King's SR Sun-PC1 conjunction

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

FIGURE B3 presents King's 1968 SR chart in terms of tropical whole-sign houses.

Regarding this chart, the Sun-PC1 conjunction is a converse primary direction in which Sun is the promissor and PC1 (the Ascendant) is the significator.

FIGURE B3: King's 1968 SR chart (tropical)

(PC12) 09:24 Sa 06:56	(PC11) 04:07 Ma 05:43	Me 07:26	(PC9) 04:07 Su 25:40 (PC10) 28:51	(PC8) 09:24 Ve 17:51
12th AR	11th PI	10th AQ	9th CP	8th SA
(PC1) 14:40 1st TA	Martin Luther King Jr. Solar-Return Chart for Age 39 (Tropical) Tuesday, 16 JAN 1968 at 13:00:30 EST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 14:40 7th SC
(PC2) 09:24 2nd GE	(PC3) 04:07 (PC4) 28:51 3rd CN	Mo 08:41 4th LE	(PC5) 04:07 Ju 04:48 R 5th VI	(PC6) 09:24 6th LI

If we take the Sun-PC1 conjunction to be traditionally converse, then the fixed point is Sun, which lies in the upper western sky. For this situation, we have

$$\text{arc length} = (RA)_{Asc} - (RA)_P + R_P \times [(AD)_{Asc} - (AD)_P],$$

where

$$R_P = \left| \frac{(RA)_P - (RA)_{MC}}{90^\circ + (AD)_P} \right|.$$

Note that the subscript P refers to the promissor.

If we take the Sun-PC1 conjunction to be neo-converse, then the fixed point is the Ascendant, which lies in the eastern sky. Here we use the negative of the arc-length formula that we would get if the primary direction were direct, and so

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{arc length} &= -[(OA)_P - (OA)_{Asc}] = (OA)_{Asc} - (OA)_P \\
 &= [(RA)_{Asc} - (AD)_{Asc}] - [(RA)_P - (AD)_P] \\
 &= (RA)_{Asc} - (RA)_P - [(AD)_{Asc} - (AD)_P],
 \end{aligned}$$

where the subscript P refers to the promissor.

Firstly, let's deal with Sun. In the tropical SR chart (FIGURE B3), Sun is at Capricorn 25° 40' 43'' with an ecliptic latitude of 0° exactly. Therefore, we have

$$\lambda_P = 295^\circ 40' 43'' \approx 295.67861^\circ, \quad \beta_P = 0^\circ.$$

We find that Sun's declination is

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_P &= \arcsin(\sin \varepsilon \times \cos \beta_P \times \sin \lambda_P + \cos \varepsilon \times \sin \beta_P) \\ &\approx \arcsin(\sin 23.43583^\circ \times \cos 0^\circ \times \sin 295.67861^\circ + \cos 23.43583^\circ \times \sin 0^\circ) \\ &\approx -21.00456^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

The equinoctial distance here is

$$\begin{aligned}(ED)_P &= \arccos\left(\frac{\cos \beta_P \times \cos \lambda_P}{\cos \delta_P}\right) \approx \arccos\left[\frac{\cos 0^\circ \times \cos 295.67861^\circ}{\cos(-21.00456^\circ)}\right] \\ &\approx 62.34377^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

Because $\lambda_P > 180^\circ$, we get $(RA)_P = 360^\circ - (ED)_P \approx 297.65623^\circ$ as Sun's right ascension. King's geographic latitude of birth is $\Phi = 33^\circ 45' N = +33.75^\circ$. We find that

$$\begin{aligned}(AD)_P &= \arcsin(\tan \delta_P \times \tan \Phi) \approx \arcsin[\tan(-21.00456^\circ) \times \tan(+33.75^\circ)] \\ &\approx -14.86550^\circ\end{aligned}$$

is Sun's ascensional difference.

Secondly, let's deal with PC1 (the Ascendant). In the tropical SR chart (FIGURE B3), the Ascendant is at Taurus $14^\circ 40' 30.5''$ with an ecliptic latitude of 0° exactly. Therefore, we have

$$\lambda_{Asc} = 14^\circ 40' 30.5'' \approx 44.67514^\circ, \quad \beta_{Asc} = 0^\circ.$$

We find that the Ascendant's declination is

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_{Asc} &= \arcsin(\sin \varepsilon \times \cos \beta_{Asc} \times \sin \lambda_{Asc} + \cos \varepsilon \times \sin \beta_{Asc}) \\ &\approx \arcsin(\sin 23.43583^\circ \times \cos 0^\circ \times \sin 44.67514^\circ + \cos 23.43583^\circ \times \sin 0^\circ) \\ &\approx +16.23828^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

The equinoctial distance here is

$$\begin{aligned}(ED)_{Asc} &= \arccos\left(\frac{\cos \beta_{Asc} \times \cos \lambda_{Asc}}{\cos \delta_{Asc}}\right) \approx \arccos\left[\frac{\cos 0^\circ \times \cos 44.67514^\circ}{\cos(+16.23828^\circ)}\right] \\ &\approx 42.21307^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

Because $\lambda_{Asc} < 180^\circ$, we get $(RA)_{Asc} = (ED)_{Asc} \approx 42.21307^\circ$ as the Ascendant's right ascension. King's geographic latitude of birth is $\Phi = 33^\circ 45' N = +33.75^\circ$. We find that

$$\begin{aligned}(AD)_{Asc} &= \arcsin(\tan \delta_{Asc} \times \tan \Phi) \approx \arcsin[\tan(+16.23828^\circ) \times \tan(+33.75^\circ)] \\ &\approx 11.22183^\circ\end{aligned}$$

is the Ascendant's ascensional difference.

Thirdly, let's deal with the ratio R_P . In the tropical SR chart (FIGURE B3), the Midheaven is at Capricorn $28^\circ 51' 10''$ with an ecliptic latitude of 0° exactly. Therefore, we have

$$\lambda_{MC} = 298^\circ 51' 10'' \approx 298.85278^\circ, \quad \beta_{MC} = 0^\circ.$$

We find that the Midheaven's declination is

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_{MC} &= \arcsin(\sin \varepsilon \times \cos \beta_{MC} \times \sin \lambda_{MC} + \cos \varepsilon \times \sin \beta_{MC}) \\ &\approx \arcsin(\sin 23.43583^\circ \times \cos 0^\circ \times \sin 298.85278^\circ + \cos 23.43583^\circ \times \sin 0^\circ) \\ &\approx -20.38640^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

The equinoctial distance here is

$$\begin{aligned}(ED)_{MC} &= \arccos\left(\frac{\cos \beta_{MC} \times \cos \lambda_{MC}}{\cos \delta_{MC}}\right) \approx \arccos\left[\frac{\cos 0^\circ \times \cos 298.85278^\circ}{\cos(-20.38640^\circ)}\right] \\ &\approx 59.01553^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

Because $\lambda_{MC} > 180^\circ$, we get $(RA)_{MC} = 360^\circ - (ED)_{MC} \approx 300.98447^\circ$ as the Midheaven's right ascension. We find that

$$R_P = \left| \frac{(RA)_P - (RA)_{MC}}{90^\circ + (AD)_P} \right| \approx \left| \frac{297.65623^\circ - 300.98447^\circ}{90^\circ + (-14.86550^\circ)} \right| \approx 0.04430.$$

Note that R_P must not exceed the value of 1.

Now we are ready to deal with the arc of direction for the converse Sun-PC1 conjunction. If we take the Sun-PC1 conjunction to be traditionally converse, then

$$\begin{aligned}\text{arc length} &= (RA)_{Asc} - (RA)_P + R_P \times [(AD)_{Asc} - (AD)_P] \\ &\approx 42.21307^\circ - 297.65623^\circ + 0.04430 \times [11.22183^\circ - (-14.86550^\circ)] \\ &\approx -254.28749^\circ \equiv -254.28749^\circ + 360^\circ = 105.71251^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

According to the SR time-key, this arc indicates

$$105.71251 \text{ deg} \times \frac{1.01460101 \text{ days of age}}{1 \text{ deg}} \approx 107.25602 \text{ days of age},$$

and so the traditionally converse Sun-PC1 conjunction predicts an event to occur about 107 days after Tuesday, 16 January 1968 (the SR date), which is on Thursday, 02 May 1968 (Day 123 of 1968).

If we take the Sun-PC1 conjunction to be neo-converse, then

$$\begin{aligned}\text{arc length} &= (RA)_{Asc} - (RA)_P - [(AD)_{Asc} - (AD)_P] \\ &\approx 42.21307^\circ - 297.65623^\circ - [11.22183^\circ - (-14.86550^\circ)] \\ &= -281.53049^\circ \equiv -281.53049^\circ + 360^\circ = 78.46951^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

According to the SR time-key, this arc indicates

$$78.46951 \text{ deg} \times \frac{1.01460101 \text{ days of age}}{1 \text{ deg}} \approx 79.61524 \text{ days of age},$$

and so the neo-converse Sun-PC1 conjunction predicts an event to occur about 80 days after Tuesday, 16 January 1968 (the SR date), which is on Friday, 05 April 1968 (Day 96 of 1968).

B4 King's LR Mars-PC1 square

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

FIGURE B4 presents King's last LR chart in terms of tropical whole-sign houses.

FIGURE B4: King's last LR chart (tropical)

(PC12) 03:07 Me 13:08 Ve 14:41 Mo 20:08 12th PI	(PC11) 02:38 11th AQ	(PC10) 02:09 10th CP	(PC9) 02:38 9th SA	(PC8) 03:07 8th SC
(PC1) 03:36 Su 06:51 Sa 14:16 Ma 29:37 1st AR	Martin Luther King Jr. Last Lunar-Return Chart (Tropical) Wednesday, 27 MAR 1968 at 06:27:08 EST Atlanta, GA (33° 45' N; 84° 23' W)			(PC7) 03:36 7th LI
(PC2) 03:07 2nd TA	(PC3) 02:38 3rd GE	(PC4) 02:09 4th CN	(PC5) 02:38 Ju 26:49 R 5th LE	(PC6) 03:07 6th VI

Regarding this chart, the Mars-PC1 square is a direct primary direction in which Mars's sinister-square copy is the promissor and PC1 (the Ascendant) is the significator. For this situation, we have

$$\text{arc length} = (OA)_P - (OA)_{Asc} ,$$

where the subscript P refers to the promissor.

Firstly, let's deal with Mars's sinister-square copy. In the tropical LR chart (FIGURE B4), Mars is at Aries 29° 37' 21" with an ecliptic latitude of $-00^{\circ} 05' 18''$. Its sinister-square copy is at Cancer 29° 37' 21" with a Bianchini ecliptic latitude of $(-00^{\circ} 05' 18'') \times \cos 90^{\circ} = 0^{\circ}$. Therefore, we have

$$\lambda_P = 119^{\circ} 37' 21'' = 119.62250^{\circ} , \quad \beta_P = 0^{\circ} .$$

We find that the copy's declination is

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_P &= \arcsin(\sin \varepsilon \times \cos \beta_P \times \sin \lambda_P + \cos \varepsilon \times \sin \beta_P) \\ &\approx \arcsin(\sin 23.43583^{\circ} \times \cos 0^{\circ} \times \sin 119.62250^{\circ} + \cos 23.43583^{\circ} \times \sin 0^{\circ}) \\ &\approx +20.22697^{\circ} . \end{aligned}$$

The equinoctial distance here is

$$(ED)_P = \arccos\left(\frac{\cos \beta_P \times \cos \lambda_P}{\cos \delta_P}\right) \approx \arccos\left[\frac{\cos 0^\circ \times \cos 119.62250^\circ}{\cos(+20.22697^\circ)}\right] \\ \approx 121.78740^\circ.$$

Because $\lambda_P < 180^\circ$, we get $(RA)_P = (ED)_P \approx 121.78740^\circ$ as the copy's right ascension. King's geographic latitude of birth is $\Phi = 33^\circ 45' N = +33.75^\circ$. For the copy's ascensional difference, we get

$$(AD)_P = \arcsin(\tan \delta_P \times \tan \Phi) \approx \arcsin[\tan(+20.22697^\circ) \times \tan(+33.75^\circ)] \\ \approx 14.25270^\circ,$$

and so

$$(OA)_P = (RA)_P - (AD)_P \approx 121.78740^\circ - 14.25270^\circ = 107.53470^\circ$$

is the copy's oblique ascension.

Secondly, let's deal with PC1 (the Ascendant). In the tropical LR chart (FIGURE B4), the Ascendant is at Aries $03^\circ 36' 50''$ with an ecliptic latitude of 0° exactly. Therefore, we have

$$\lambda_{Asc} = 03^\circ 36' 50'' \approx 3.61389^\circ, \quad \beta_{Asc} = 0^\circ.$$

We find that the Ascendant's declination is

$$\delta_{Asc} = \arcsin(\sin \varepsilon \times \cos \beta_{Asc} \times \sin \lambda_{Asc} + \cos \varepsilon \times \sin \beta_{Asc}) \\ \approx \arcsin(\sin 23.43583^\circ \times \cos 0^\circ \times \sin 3.61389^\circ + \cos 23.43583^\circ \times \sin 0^\circ) \\ \approx +1.43652^\circ.$$

The equinoctial distance here is

$$(ED)_{Asc} = \arccos\left(\frac{\cos \beta_{Asc} \times \cos \lambda_{Asc}}{\cos \delta_{Asc}}\right) \approx \arccos\left[\frac{\cos 0^\circ \times \cos 3.61389^\circ}{\cos(+1.43652^\circ)}\right] \\ \approx 3.31646^\circ.$$

Because $\lambda_{Asc} < 180^\circ$, we get $(RA)_{Asc} = (ED)_{Asc} \approx 3.31646^\circ$ as the Ascendant's right ascension. King's geographic latitude of birth is $\Phi = 33^\circ 45' N = +33.75^\circ$. For the Ascendant's ascensional difference, we get

$$(AD)_{Asc} = \arcsin(\tan \delta_{Asc} \times \tan \Phi) \approx \arcsin[\tan(+1.43652^\circ) \times \tan(+33.75^\circ)] \\ \approx 0.96010^\circ,$$

and so

$$(OA)_{Asc} = (RA)_{Asc} - (AD)_{Asc} \approx 3.31646^\circ - 0.96010^\circ = 2.35636^\circ$$

is the Ascendant's oblique ascension.

Now we are ready to deal with the arc of direction for the direct Mars-PC1 square. We find that

$$\text{arc length} = (OA)_P - (OA)_{Asc} \approx 107.53470^\circ - 2.35636^\circ = 105.17834^\circ.$$

According to the LR time-key, this arc indicates

$$105.17834 \text{ deg} \times \frac{0.0758935056 \text{ days of age}}{1 \text{ deg}} \approx 7.98235 \text{ days of age},$$

and so the direct Mars-PC1 square predicts an event to occur about 8 days after Wednesday, 27 March 1968 (the LR date), which is on Thursday, 04 April 1968 (Day 95 of 1968).

Bibliography

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

01. Amen, Ra Un Nefer, *Metu Neter, Volume 1*, 1st edition, Kamit Publications (1990), ISBN-10: 1877662038, ISBN-13: 978-1877662034.
02. Borealis, Alexey, *Predictive Astrology Textbook*, The Wessex Astrologer (2025), ISBN-10: 1916625363, ISBN-13: 978-1916625365; various articles from the blog website <<https://morinus-astrology.com/blog/author/alexei-borealis/>>.
03. Bowser, Kenneth, *An Introduction to Western Sidereal Astrology*, 3rd edition, American Federation of Astrologers (2021), ISBN-10: 0866906770, ISBN-13: 978-0866906777.
04. Brennan, Chris, *Hellenistic Astrology: The Study of Fate and Fortune*, 1st edition, Amor Fati Publications (2017), ISBN-10: 0998588903, ISBN-13: 978-0998588902.
05. Bryan, Mychal A., *The New Western Medical Astrology*, Oraculos Press (2025), ISBN-13: 978-8988100904; *Horary Astrology & the Natal Promise*, Oraculos Press (2024), ISBN-13: 978-8988100997; *Mastering Traditional Astrology*, Oraculos Press (2023), ISBN-13: 978-8988100959.
06. Döşer, Öner, *The Art of Horary Astrology*, The Cazimi Press (2019), ISBN-10: 193458651X, ISBN-13: 978-1934586518.
07. Dreyer, Ronnie Gale, *Indian Astrology*, HarperCollins (1990), ISBN-10: 0850307384, ISBN-13: 978-0850307382.
08. Gansten, Martin, *Annual Predictive Techniques of the Greek, Arabic and Indian Astrologers*, The Wessex Astrologer (2020), ISBN-10: 1910531413, ISBN-13: 978-1910531419; *Primary Directions: Astrology's Old Master Technique*, The Wessex Astrologer (2009), ISBN-10: 1902405390, ISBN-13: 978-1902405391.
09. Louis, Anthony, *Secrets of Predictive Astrology*, 1st edition, Llewellyn Publications (2023), ISBN-10: 0738774642, ISBN-13: 978-0738774640; *Primary Directions in Astrology: A Primer, Kindle Edition 1.0* (2013); various articles from the blog website <<https://tonylouis.wordpress.com/author/tonylouis/>>.

Index

[\[Back to TOC\]](#)

A

air element, 9
angles, 13
angular house, 30
applying aspect, 27
aspect copies, 26
Ascendant, 13
ayanāṃśa, 8, 22

B

Bianchini aspect circle, 117

C

cadent house, 30
cardinal modality, 9
celestial sphere, 4
Chaldean order, 27
classical planets, 4
conjunction, 24

D

declination, 116
Descendant, 13
dexter aspect, 27
direct motion, 19
diurnal chart, 29
dual modality, 9
duodecile, 24

E

earth element, 9
ecliptic, 6
ecliptic latitude, 22
ecliptic longitude, 22

F

fire element, 9
fixed modality, 9

H

horizon, 12
house cusp, 14
house lord, 34, 49

I

Imum Coeli, 13

L

luminaries, 4

M

mean solar day, 122
mean tropical year, 122
Medium Coeli, 13
meridian, 13
Midheaven, 13

N

native, 49
nocturnal chart, 29

O

obliquity, 116
opposition, 25

P

planetary joys, 14
Porphyry house system, 20
precession of the equinoxes, 8
primary motion, 20
principle of overcoming, 25
promissor, 117

Q

quadrant-house system, 10
quadruplicities, 14
querent, 34
quesited, 34
quincunx, 24

R

retrograde motion, 19
right ascension, 116
rising sign, 20

S

secondary motion, 21
semi-sextile, 24

separating aspect, 27
sextile, 24
sidereal day, 122
sidereal month, 124
sidereal year, 122
sidereal zodiac, 7
sign degree, 19
sign longitude, 19
significator, 34, 117
sinister aspect, 27
square, 24
succeedent house, 30

T

traditional astrology, 4
trine, 24
triplicities, 9
tropical zodiac, 7

U

under the beams, 40

W

water element, 9
whole-sign house system, 20

Z

zodiac, 6